PORSCHE

Boxster, Boxster S

Owner's Manual

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WKD 987 021 10 5/09

© Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG

Porsche, the Porsche crest, Boxster, PCCB, PCM, PDK, PSM and Tequipment are registered trademarks and the distinctive shapes of Porsche automobiles are trademarks of
Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG.

All rights reserved.

Printed in Germany

Orientation guides in the Owner's Manual

The orientation guides in the Owner's Manual are highlighted in yellow.

Overall Table of Contents

At the start of the Owner's Manual you will find an overview of the overall contents of the Owner's Manual.

Section Contents

There is a summary of topics with the corresponding page numbers at the beginning of each main chapter.

Index

There is a detailed, alphabetical index at the end of this Owner's Manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dear Owner,

We would like to thank you for your purchase of a Porsche Sports car.

Judging by the car you have chosen, you are a motorist of a special breed, and you are probably no novice when it comes to automobiles.

Remember however, as with any vehicle, you should take time to familiarize yourself with your Porsche and its performance characteristics. Always drive within your own unique capabilities as a driver and your level of experience with your Porsche. Ensure that anyone else driving your Porsche does the same. To prevent or minimize injury, always use your safety belts. Never consume alcohol or drugs before or during the operation of your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual contains a host of useful information. Please take the time to read this manual before you drive your new Porsche. Become familiar with the operation of your Porsche car for maximum safety and operating pleasure. The better you know your Porsche, the more pleasure you will experience driving your new car.
Always keep your Owner's Manual in the car, and give it to the new owner if you ever sell your Porsche.

A separate Maintenance Booklet explains how you can keep your Porsche in top driving condition by having it serviced regularly.
A separate Warranty and Customer Information Booklet contains detailed information about the warranties covering your Porsche.

For U.S. only:

If you believe that your vehicle has a fault which could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Porsche Cars North America, Inc. (Porsche Cars N.A.).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety problem exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you and your dealer, or Porsche Cars N.A..

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.savercar.gov.

Your car has thousands of parts and components which have been designed and manufactured in accordance with Porsche's high standards of engineering quality and safety.

Warning!

Any alteration or misuse of the vehicle can lead to accidents and severe or fatal personal injuries.
Any alteration of the vehicle may negate or interfere with those safety features built into the vehicle. Modifications may be carried out on your vehicle only if approved by Porsche. Your Porsche is intended to be used in a safe manner obeying the local laws and in the light of driving conditions faced by you, and in accordance with the instructions provided in this Owner's Manual.

▷ Do not misuse your Porsche by ignoring those laws and driving conditions, or by ignoring the instructions in this manual.

Caution!

The fitting of racing tires (e.g. slicks) for sporting events is not approved by Porsche. Very high cornering speeds can be achieved with racing tires. However, the resulting transverse acceleration values would jeopardize the adequate supply of oil to the engine. Porsche therefore will not accept any warranty or accept any liability for damage occurring as a result of non-compliance with this provision.

▷ Do not fit racing tires (e.g. slicks) for sporting events on your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Regularly check your vehicle for signs of damage.
Damaged or missing aerodynamic components such as spoilers or underside panels affect the driving behavior and therefore must be replaced immediately.

Your car may have all or some of the components described in this manual.
Should you have difficulty understanding any of the explanations of features or equipment installed in your vehicle, contact your authorized Porsche dealer. He/She will be glad to assist you. Also check with your dealer on other available options or equipment.

Throughout this booklet, left is designated as the driver's side of the vehicle, and right as the passenger's side of the vehicle.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the information available at the time of printing.

It has always been Porsche's policy to continuously improve its products. Porsche, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specification, and to make additions or improvements in its product without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

We wish you many miles of safe and pleasurable driving in your Porsche.

⚠ Warning!

For your own protection and longer service life of your car, please follow all operating instructions and special warnings. These special warnings use the safety alert symbol, followed by the words **Danger, Warning and Caution**. These special warnings contain important messages regarding your safety and/or the potential for damage to your Porsche. Ignoring them could result in serious mechanical failure, serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Do not alter your Porsche. Any alteration could create dangerous conditions or defeat safety engineering features built into your car.
- ▷ Do not misuse your Porsche. Use it safely, and consistently with the law, according to the driving conditions, and the instructions in this manual.

Alteration or misuse of your Porsche could cause accidents and serious personal injury or death.

Note to owners

In Canada, this manual is also available in French. To obtain a copy contact your dealer or write to:

Note aux proprietaires

Au Canada on peut se procurer un exemplaire de ce Manuel en français auprès du concessionaire ou du:

Porsche Cars Canada, Ltd.
Automobiles Porsche Canada, LTEE

5925 Airport Road
Suite 420
Mississauga, Ontario
Canada L4V 1W1

Telephone number for customer assistance:
1-800-PORSCHE / Option 3

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB)

▷ Please see the chapter "BRAKES" on Page 56.

The high-performance brake system is designed for optimal braking effect at all speeds and temperatures.
Certain speeds, braking forces and ambient conditions (such as temperature and humidity) therefore might cause brake noises.

Wear on the different components and braking system, such as brake pads and brake discs, depends to a great extent on the individual driving style and the conditions of use and therefore cannot be expressed in actual miles on the road.

The values communicated by Porsche are based on normal operation adapted to traffic. Wear increases considerably when the vehicle is driven on race tracks or through an aggressive driving style.

▷ Please consult an authorized Porsche dealer about the current guidelines in effect before such use of your vehicle.

Setting and operating vehicle components when driving

⚠ **Warning!**

There is a danger of accident if you set or operate the on-board computer, radio, navigation system, telephone or other equipment when driving.
This could distract you from the traffic and cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Operate the components while driving only if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely.

▷ Carry out any complicated operating or setting procedures only with the vehicle stationary.

Portable Fuel Containers

⚠ **Danger!**

Portable fuel containers may leak, whether they are full or partially empty. Fuel leaking from a portable container carried in your vehicle could, in case of an accident, cause a fire or explosion, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Never carry additional fuel in portable containers in your vehicle.

Ground Clearance

⚠ **Caution!**

Risk of damage. The vehicle may touch the ground as a result of reduced ground clearance.

▷ Drive carefully and slowly on steep slopes (e.g. parking lots, curbs, uneven roads, lifting platforms etc.).

▷ Avoid steep ramps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Exhaust

Danger!

Engine exhaust is dangerous if inhaled.
Engine exhaust fumes have many components which you can smell. They also contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is a colorless and odorless gas.
Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and even death if inhaled.

- Never start or let the engine run in an enclosed, unventilated area.
  It is not recommended to sit in your car for prolonged periods with the engine on and the car not moving.

California Proposition 65 Warning

Warning!

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Hot Exhaust Pipes

Warning!

Risk of burn injury when standing near or coming into contact with the exhaust pipe.

The exhaust pipe is hot when the vehicle is running and remains hot for some time after the vehicle is turned off.

- To prevent injury, make a point of noting where your vehicle's exhaust pipe is, avoid placing your legs near the exhaust pipe, and closely supervise children around the vehicle when the exhaust pipe could be hot.
  A hot exhaust pipe can cause serious burns.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Table of Contents

Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB) 4
Setting and operating vehicle components when driving 4
Portable Fuel Containers 4
Ground Clearance 4
Engine Exhaust 5

Before driving off..... 8

Before driving off... 8
Break in hints for the first 2,000 miles/3,000 kilometers 10

Operation, Safety..... 13

Keys 15
Security Wheel Bolts 15
Doors 18
Central Locking in Cars without Alarm System 19
Central Locking in Cars with Alarm System ... 21
Alarm System, Passenger Compartment Monitoring 25
Power Windows 27
Mirrors 29
Rear Window Defogger, Door Mirror Heating ..31
Seat Adjustment and Head Restraints 32
Seat Memory 35
Heated Seats 37
Seat Ventilation 38
Steering Wheel Adjustment 38
Steering Wheel Heating 39
Multi-Functional Steering Wheel 40
Sun Visors 41
Safety Belts 42
Airbag Systems 44
Child Restraint Systems 50
LATCH System Child seat bracket on the passenger's seat 54
Sports Exhaust System 55
Parking Brake 55
Brakes 56
ABS Brake System (Antilock Brake System) ...59
Clutch Pedal 60
Sport Mode 61
Porsche Stability Management (PSM) 63
Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) 66
Retractable Spoiler 67
Fixed rear spoiler 68
Interior lights 69
Parking Aids 70
Ignition/Starter Switch with anti-theft Steering Lock 72
Starting Procedures 75
Stopping Engine 76
Emergency Flasher Switch 77
Light Switch on Vehicles with Bi-Xenon Headlights 78
Light Switch on Vehicles with Halogen Headlights 80
Turn Signal / Headlight Dimmer /Parking light / Flasher Lever 81
Windshield Wiper/ Washer Lever 82
Automatic Speed Control 84
Cupholder 86
Ashtray 87
Cigarette Lighter 88
Storage in the Passenger Compartment 89
Luggage Storage on Engine Compartment Lid 91
Luggage Compartment Lids 92
Luggage Compartment 94
Rear luggage compartment 94
Trunk Entrapment 95
Porsche Communication Management (PCM) . 97
Car Telephone and Aftermarket Alarms 99
iPod, USB and AUX 100
Fire Extinguisher 101
HomeLink 102

Automatic Air Conditioning System, Heated Rear Window/ Door Mirror Heating..... 105

Air Conditioning 106
Automatic Air Conditioning System 109
Central and Side Vents 112
Fresh-air Intake 112
Heated Rear Window/Door Mirror Heating ... 113

Instruments, On-Board Computer, Warnings 115

Instrument Panel USA Models 116
Instrument Panel Canada Models 118
Automatic Speed Control Indicator light 120
Instrument Illumination 120

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trip Odometer 121
Speedometer 122
Changing over between Miles / Kilometers ..122
Tachometer 123
Turn Signal Indicator Light 123
High Beam Indicator Light 123
Gear Shift Indicator
(in vehicles with manual transmission) 123
Cooling System 124
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) 125
Fuel 126
Clock 127
Outside Temperature 127
Check Engine (Emission Control) 129
On-Board Computer (BC) 130
Warnings on the instrument panel and the on-board computer 162

Shifting Gears.... 171

Manual Transmission, Clutch 172
Drive-Off Assistant 173
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) 174

Mobile Roofs 181

Convertible Top 182
Windstop 189
Hardtop 190

Maintenance, Car Care 195

Exercise Extreme Caution when Working on your Vehicle 196
Coolant Level 197
Engine Oil 199
Engine Oil Level 199
Engine Oil Recommendation 200
Brake Fluid Level 202
Fuel Economy 204
Operating your Porsche in other Countries ...204
Fuel Recommendations 206
Portable Fuel Containers 207
Fuel Evaporation Control 207
Emission Control System 208
How Emission Control Works 209
Washer Fluid 210
Power Steering 211
Air Filter 211
Combination Filter 211
Fluids/Oils for Manual Transmission and Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) 211
Wiper Blades 212
Car Care Instructions 213

Practical Tips, Emergency Service.... 221

Exercise Extreme Caution when Working on your Vehicle 222
Tires/Wheels 223
Loading Information 234
Wheel Bolts 236
Changing a wheel 237
Flat Tire.... 239
Lifting the Vehicle with a Lifting Platform or Garage Lift 242
Spacers 243
Electrical System 245
Battery 249
Replacing the remote-control battery 254
Emergency Starting with Jumper Cables 255
Bulb chart 257
Lights, Replacing Bulbs 257
Headlights 258
Number Plate Light 266
Changing Light-Emitting Diodes and Long-Life Bulbs 266
Adjusting Headlights 267
Towing 269

Vehicle Identification, Technical Data 273

Vehicle Identification 274
Technical Data 276
Tire Pressure for Cold Tires 277
Tires, Rims, Tracks 278
Driving Performance* 280
Capacities 281
Weights 282
Dimensions 282
Diagrams 283

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dear Porsche Owner

A lot has gone into the manufacture of your Porsche, including advanced engineering, rigid quality control and demanding inspections. These engineering and safety features will be enhanced by you...

the safe driver...

- who knows his/her car and all controls,
- who maintains the vehicle properly,
- who uses driving skills wisely and always drives within her/his own capabilities and the level of familiarity with the vehicle.

You will find helpful hints in this manual on how to perform most of the checks listed on the following pages.
If in doubt, have these checks performed by your authorized Porsche dealer.

Before driving off...

Check the following items first

- ▷ Turn the engine off before you attempt any checks or repairs on the vehicle.
- ▷ Be sure the tires are inflated correctly. Check tires for damage and tire wear.
- ▷ See that wheel bolts are properly tightened and not loose or missing.
- ▷ Check engine oil level, add if necessary. Make it a habit to have engine oil checked with every fuel filling.
- ▷ Check all fluid levels such as windshield washer and brake fluid levels.
- ▷ Be sure the vehicle battery is well charged and cranks the engine properly.
- ▷ Check all doors and lids for proper operation and latch them properly.
- ▷ Check, and if necessary replace worn or cracked wiper blades.
- ▷ See that all windows are clear and unobstructed.
- ▷ Check air intake slots and area between luggage compartment lid and windshield. Ensure that these areas are free of snow and ice, so the heater and the windshield wipers work properly.
- ▷ If a child will be riding in the vehicle, check child seat/child seat restraint system to ensure that restraints are properly adjusted.
- ▷ Child restraint systems will not fit into the Sports bucket seat.
  Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.
  The Sports bucket seat cannot be equipped with the LATCH system and thus the airbag system cannot be manually deactivated.
- ▷ Check all exterior and interior lights for operation and that the lenses are clean.
- ▷ Check the headlights for proper aim, and if necessary, have them adjusted.
- ▷ Check under the vehicle for leaks.
- ▷ Be sure all luggage is stowed securely.

Emergency equipment

It is good practice to carry emergency equipment in your vehicle.
Some of the items you should have are:
window scraper, snow brush, container or bag of sand or salt, emergency light, small shovel, first-aid kit, etc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In the driver's seat...

- Check operation of the horn.
- Position seat for easy reach of foot pedals and controls.
  To reduce the possibility of injury from the airbag deployment, you should always sit back as far from the steering wheel as is practical, while still maintaining full vehicle control.
- Adjust the inside and outside rear view mirrors.
- Buckle your safety belts.
- Check operation of the foot and parking brake.
- Check all warning and indicator lights with ignition on and engine not running.
- Start engine and check all warning displays for warning symbols.
- Never leave an idling car unattended.
- Lock doors from inside, especially with children in the car to prevent inadvertent opening of doors from inside or outside.
  Drive with doors locked.

On the road...

- Never drive after you have consumed alcohol or drugs.
- Always have your safety belt fastened.
- Always drive defensively.
  Expect the unexpected.
- Use signals to indicate turns and lane changes.
- Turn on headlights at dusk or when the driving conditions warrant it.
- Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, depending on traffic, road and weather conditions.
- Reduce speed at night and during inclement weather.
  Driving in wet weather requires caution and reduced speeds, particularly on roads with standing water, as the handling characteristics of the vehicle may be impaired due to hydroplaning of the tires.
- Always observe speed limits and obey road signs and traffic laws.
- When tired, get well off the road, stop and take a rest. Turn the engine off. Do not sit in the vehicle with engine idling.
  Please see the chapter "ENGINE EXHAUST" on Page 5.
- When parked, always set the parking brake. Move the PDK selector lever to "P" or the gearshift lever to reverse or first gear.
  On hills also turn the front wheels toward the curb.
- When emergency repairs become necessary, move the vehicle well off the road. Turn on the emergency flasher and use other warning devices to alert other motorists. Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other flammable material.
- Make it a habit to have the engine oil checked with every refueling.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Break in hints for the first 2,000 miles/3,000 kilometers

The following tips will be helpful in obtaining optimum performance from your new Porsche.

Despite the most modern, high-precision manufacturing methods, the moving parts must still wear in with each other. This wearing-in occurs mainly in the first 2,000 miles/3,000 kilometers.

Therefore:

- ▷ Preferably take longer trips.
- ▷ Avoid frequent cold starts with short-distance driving whenever possible.
- ▷ Avoid full throttle starts and abrupt stops.
- ▷ Do not exceed maximum engine speed of 4,200 rpm (revolutions per minute).
- ▷ Do not run a cold engine at high rpm either in Neutral or in gear.
- ▷ Do not let the engine labor, especially when driving uphill. Shift to the next lower gear in time (use the most favorable rpm range).
- ▷ Never lug the engine in high gear at low speeds. This rule applies at all times, not just during the break-in period.
- ▷ Do not participate in motor racing events, sports driving schools, etc. during the first 2,000 miles/3,000 kilometers.

There may be a slight stiffness in the steering, gear-shifting or other controls during the break-in period which will gradually disappear.

Break in brake pads and brake discs

New brake pads and discs have to be “broken in”, and therefore only attain optimal friction when the car has covered several hundred miles or km. The slightly reduced braking ability must be compensated for by pressing the brake pedal harder. This also applies whenever the brake pads and brake discs are replaced.

New tires

New tires do not have maximum traction. They tend to be slippery.

- ▷ Break in new tires by driving at moderate speeds during the first 60 to 120 miles/100 to 200 km. Longer braking distances must be anticipated.

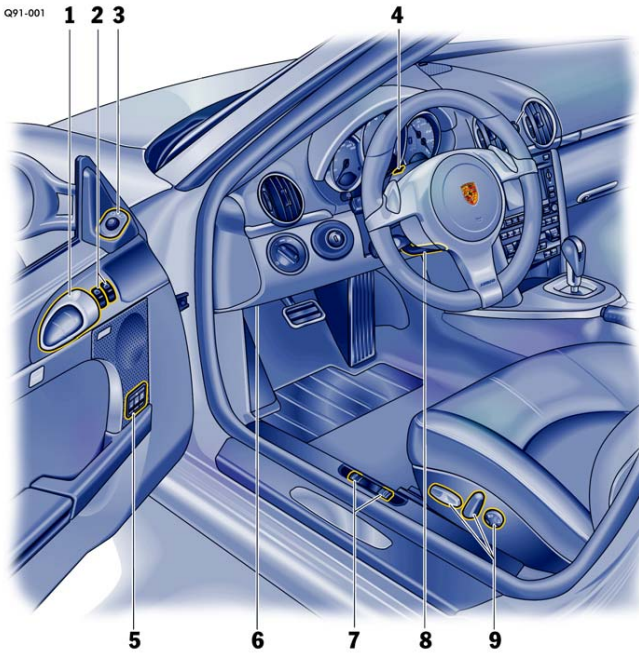
Engine oil and fuel consumption

During the break-in period oil and fuel consumption may be higher than normal.

As always, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of oil, the speed at which the engine is operated, the climate and road conditions, as well as the amount of dilution and oxidation of the lubricant.

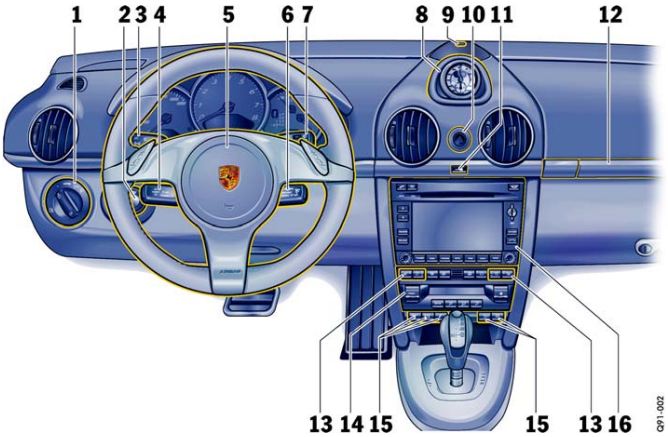
- ▷ Make a habit of checking engine oil with every refueling, add if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1 Inner door handle, Page 18
2 Power windows, Page 27
3 Door mirror control, Page 29
4 Hands-free microphone
5 Seat memory, Page 35
6 Diagnostic socket (OBD)
7 Front and rear lid release, Page 92
8 Steering-wheel adjustment, Page 38
9 Seat adjustment, Page 32

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1 Light switch, Page 78, 80

2 Ignition/starter switch, Page 72

3 Turn signal/headlight dimmer, flasher lever, Page 81

4 Lever for on-board computer, Page 130

5 Horn

6 Lever for automatic speed control, Page 84

7 Wiper/washer lever, Page 82

8 Stopwatch, Page 140

9 Interior temperature sensor

10 Emergency flasher switch, Page 77

11 Central locking button, Page 20, 23

12 Cupholder, Page 86

13 Seat heating/ventilation left/right, Page 37, 38

14 Operating panel for air conditioning, Page 106

15 Sport/Sport Plus program, Page 61
Retactable spoiler, Page 67
Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM), Page 66
Porsche Stability Management (PSM), Page 63
Sports exhaust system, Page 55

16 Operating panel for Porsche Communication Management (PCM), see separate operating instructions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operation, Safety

Keys 15
Security Wheel Bolts 15
Doors 18
Central Locking in Cars without Alarm System 19
Central Locking in Cars with Alarm System ... 21
Alarm System,
Passenger Compartment Monitoring 25
Power Windows 27
Mirrors 29
Rear Window Defogger, Door Mirror Heating .. 31
Seat Adjustment and Head Restraints 32
Seat Memory 35
Heated Seats 37
Seat Ventilation 38
Steering Wheel Adjustment 38
Steering Wheel Heating 39
Multi-Functional Steering Wheel 40
Sun Visors 41
Safety Belts 42
Airbag Systems 44
Child Restraint Systems 50
LATCH System
Child seat bracket on the passenger's seat 54
Sports Exhaust System 55
Parking Brake 55
Brakes 56
ABS Brake System (Antilock Brake System) ... 59
Clutch Pedal 60
Sport Mode 61
Porsche Stability Management (PSM) 63
Porsche Active Suspension Management
(PASM) 66
Retractable Spoiler 67
Fixed rear spoiler 68
Interior lights 69
Parking Aids 70
Ignition/Starter Switch with
anti-theft Steering Lock 72
Starting Procedures 75
Stopping Engine 76
Emergency Flasher Switch 77
Light Switch on Vehicles
with Bi-Xenon Headlights 78
Light Switch on Vehicles
with Halogen Headlights 80
Turn Signal / Headlight Dimmer /Parking light /
Flasher Lever 81
Windshield Wiper/ Washer Lever 82
Automatic Speed Control 84
Cupholder 86
Ashtray 87
Cigarette Lighter 88
Storage in the Passenger Compartment 89
Luggage Storage on Engine Compartment Lid 91
Luggage Compartment Lids 92
Luggage Compartment 94
Rear luggage compartment 94
Trunk Entrapment 95
Porsche Communication Management (PCM) .. 97
Car Telephone and Aftermarket Alarms 99
iPod, USB and AUX 100
Fire Extinguisher 101
HomeLink 102

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Never invite car theft!

An unlocked car with the key in the ignition lock invites car theft.

A steering wheel lock and a **gong alarm** are standard equipment in your Porsche.
The gong alarm will sound if you open the driver's door while the key is still in the ignition lock. It is your reminder to pull the key out of the ignition lock and to lock the doors.

Warning!

Any uncontrolled movement of the vehicle may result in property damage, serious personal injury or death.
Never leave your vehicle unattended with the key in the ignition lock, especially if children and/or pets are left unattended in the vehicle. They can operate power windows and other controls. If the engine is left running, they may accidentally engage the shift lever. Serious personal injury or death could result from loss of control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Always remove the ignition key.
- ▷ Always set the parking brake.
- ▷ Lock the doors with the remote control.

Warning!

Risk of a serious accident.
The steering column will lock when you remove the key while you are driving or as the car is rolling to a stop. You will not be able to steer the car.
Serious personal injury or death could result from loss of control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Never remove the key from the steering lock while you are driving.

To protect your vehicle and your possessions from theft, you should always proceed as follows when leaving your vehicle:

- ▷ Close windows.
- ▷ Close convertible top (with the convertible top open, the passenger compartment monitoring system is always switched off)
- ▷ Remove ignition key.
- ▷ Engage steering lock.
- ▷ Lock glove compartment.
- ▷ Remove valuables (e.g. car documents, cell phones, house keys) from the car.
- ▷ Lock doors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keys

▷ Please see the chapter "ALARM SYSTEM, PASSENGER COMPARTMENT MONITORING" on Page 25.

▷ Please see the chapter "CENTRAL LOCKING IN CARS WITHOUT ALARM SYSTEM" on Page 19.

▷ Please see the chapter "CENTRAL LOCKING IN CARS WITH ALARM SYSTEM" on Page 21.

Two car keys are supplied with your Porsche.
These keys operate all the locks on your vehicle.

▷ Be careful with your car keys: do not part with them except under exceptional circumstances.

▷ To avoid battery run-down, always remove the ignition key from the ignition lock.

Emergency operation

▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY OPERATION – PULLING OUT THE IGNITION KEY" on Page 74.

Replacement keys

Replacement car keys can be obtained only from your authorized Porsche dealer, and this can sometimes be very time-consuming.
You should therefore always keep a spare key on your person.
Keep it in a safe place (e.g. wallet), but under no circumstances in or on the vehicle.

The key codes of new keys have to be "reported" to the car control unit by your authorized Porsche dealer.

A total of 6 car keys can be reported to the control unit.

Disabling key codes

If a key is lost, the key codes can be disabled by an authorized Porsche dealer.
All the remaining car keys are required for this purpose.
Disabling the code ensures that the car can be **started** only using authorized keys.

Note

▷ Please note that the other locks can still be opened with the disabled key.

Immobilizer

There is a transponder (an electronic component) in the key grip, containing a stored code.
When the ignition is switched on, the ignition lock checks the code.
The immobilizer can be deactivated and the engine started only using an authorized ignition key.

Switching off the immobilizer

▷ Insert the ignition key into the ignition lock.

If the ignition is left on for more than 2 minutes without the engine being started, the immobilizer is switched on again.

▷ If this happens, turn the ignition key back to position **3** (ignition off) before starting the engine. The immobilizer is switched off again, and the engine can be started.

▷ Please see the chapter "IGNITION/STARTER SWITCH WITH ANTI-THEFT STEERING LOCK" on Page 72.

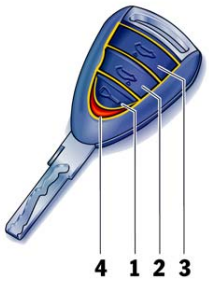
Switching on the immobilizer

▷ Remove ignition key.

Security Wheel Bolts

▷ If wheels have to be removed during a workshop visit, do not forget to hand over the socket for the security wheel bolts along with the car key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1 - *Central locking button*
2 - *Front luggage compartment lid button*
3 - *Rear luggage compartment lid button*
4 - *Light-emitting diode*

R81-003

Key with Radio Remote Control

Unlocking the vehicle

▷ Press button **1**.

Locking the vehicle

▷ Press button **1**.

Switching off the alarm system if it is triggered accidentally

▷ Press button **1**.

Unlocking front luggage compartment lid

▷ Press button **2** for approx. two seconds.

Unlocking rear luggage compartment lid

▷ Press button **3** for approx. two seconds.

If the vehicle was locked, it is unlocked simultaneously with the luggage compartment.
In vehicles with seat memory the stored seat and door mirror positions are automatically set.
The vehicle will be locked again approx.
80 seconds after the luggage compartment is closed if none of the doors was opened.

Note

Your authorized Porsche dealer can program further types of unlocking.

Type 1

The relocking time of the doors can be adjusted to suit your individual requirements:
10 - 100 seconds.

Type 2

The doors stay locked when the luggage compartment is unlocked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Malfunction of the remote control

The remote control may not function correctly due to local radio wave interference. The vehicle will then not lock properly.
This can be identified by the missing locking sound and the missing check-back signal of the emergency flasher.

If this should occur:

▷ Lock the vehicle with the key in the door.

The remote-control standby function switches off after 7 days

If the vehicle is not started or unlocked with the remote control within 7 days, the remote control standby function is switched off (to prevent discharging of the vehicle battery).

1. In this case, unlock the driver's door with the key at the door lock.
   Leave the door closed in order to prevent the alarm system from being triggered.
2. Press button **1** on the remote control.
   The remote control is now activated again and the alarm system is switched off.

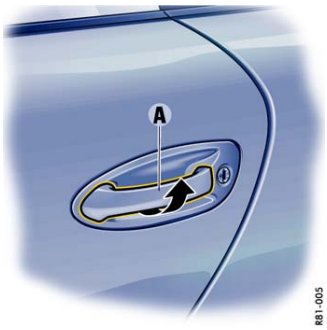
Operational readiness of the remote control interrupted

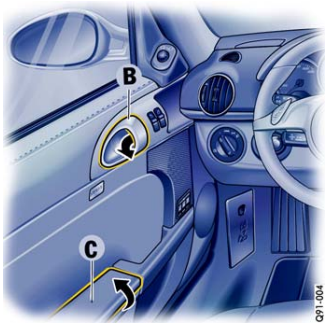
Encoded data is transmitted to the vehicle each time the wireless remote control is operated. If the remote control is operated too often outside the range of the vehicle, this can result in the central locking system no longer responding.
In this case, the remote control and vehicle must be synchronized.

Carrying out the synchronization

1. Unlock the driver's door with the key at the door lock.
2. Open driver's door and insert the ignition key into the ignition lock within 10 seconds to prevent the alarm system from being triggered.
3. With the key inserted, press and hold button **1** on the remote control for approx. 5 seconds.
   The synchronization is now complete.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine





Doors

If the door windows are closed, they will be automatically opened by a few millimeters when the doors are opened and, when the doors are closed, they will be closed again. This makes it easier to open and close the doors and protects the seals.

▷ Therefore, you should pull the door handle slowly so that the door window can be lowered before the door is opened.

Opening doors from outside

▷ Unlock vehicle with the remote control.

▷ Slowly pull door handle **A**.

Opening unlocked doors from inside

▷ Slowly pull door handle **B**.

Opening locked doors from inside

▷ Slowly pull door handle **B** twice.

▷ Please see the chapter "LOCKING CONDITIONS" on Page 22.

Door storage tray

Opening storage tray

▷ Open the cover **C**.

Keep the door storage tray **C** closed while driving for safety reasons.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Central Locking in Cars without Alarm System

This device complies with:
Part 15 of the FCC Rules
RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.
Such modification could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Warning!

Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by Porsche could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

▷ Please see the chapter "LOAD SWITCH-OFF AFTER 2 HOURS OR 7 DAYS" on Page 246.

▷ Please see the chapter "SEAT MEMORY" on Page 35.

Both car doors and the filler flap can be centrally unlocked or locked with the remote control.

Any person remaining in the locked car can open the door with the inner door handle:

1. Pull inner door handle once to unlock door lock.
2. Pull inner door handle again to open door.

Automatic relocking

If the car is unlocked by remote control and none of the car doors is opened within approx. 100 seconds, automatic relocking takes place. This relocking time can be adapted to your individual requirements (10 - 100 seconds) by an authorized Porsche dealer.

Emergency operation – opening

▷ Unlock the driver's door with the key at the door lock.

Emergency operation – closing

▷ Lock the driver's door with the key at the door lock.
If there is a defect in the central locking system, all functioning elements of the central locking system will be locked.

The fault should be remedied immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Indication by emergency flasher

If the **remote control** is used for unlocking or locking, a response is provided by the emergency flasher:

– Unlocking – single flash.

– Locking – double flash.

Overload protection

If the central locking system is operated more than ten times within a minute, further operation is blocked for 30 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Central locking switch

The central locking switch on the dashboard lets you lock and unlock both doors electrically.

Note

If the doors are locked with the key or remote control, they can not be opened by pressing the central locking switch.

Locking

▷ Press the rocker-switch.
Indicator light in the rocker switch lights up if ignition is on.
If the doors were locked with the central locking switch, they can be opened by pulling the inner door handle **twice**.

Unlocking

▷ Press the rocker-switch.
Indicator light goes off.

Automatic door locking

Your authorized Porsche dealer can program diverse types of automatic door locking in the control unit of the central locking system.

Type 1

Doors lock automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Type 2

Doors lock automatically when a speed of 3 - 6 mph (5 - 10 km/h) is exceeded.

Type 3

Doors lock automatically when the ignition is switched on. If doors are opened with the engine running, they lock again automatically when a speed of 3 - 6 mph (5 - 10 km/h) is exceeded.

Type 4

The doors do not lock automatically.

Note

Automatically locked doors can be unlocked with the central locking button or opened by pulling on the inside door handle twice.

On vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus, the PCM can be used to activate automatic door locking.

▷ Please see the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

Warning!

In an emergency situation where you need to exit the car through an automatically locked door, remember the following procedure to open the door.

▷ Unlock the doors by pressing the central locking button **or**

▷ pull the inside door handle **twice** to open the door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Central Locking in Cars with Alarm System

This device complies with:
Part 15 of the FCC Rules
RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.
Such modification could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Warning!

Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by Porsche could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

▷ Please see the chapter "LOAD SWITCH-OFF AFTER 2 HOURS OR 7 DAYS" on Page 246.

▷ Please see the chapter "SEAT MEMORY" on Page 35.

Both car doors and the filler flap can be centrally unlocked or locked with the remote control.

A short **signal from the alarm horn** will draw your attention to the fact that the following components are not completely closed when you try to lock the vehicle:

– Driver's door (The vehicle cannot be locked if the driver's door is not completely closed)
– Passenger's door
– Luggage compartment lids
– Glove compartment

Unlocking the vehicle by using the key in the door lock and opening the door may activate the alarm system within 10 seconds.

Note

On vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus, the PCM can be used to activate automatic door locking.

▷ Please see the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

Automatic relocking

If the car is unlocked by remote control and none of the car doors is opened within approx.
100 seconds, automatic relocking takes place.
This relocking time can be adapted to your individual requirements (10 - 100 seconds) by an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Locking conditions

▷ Lock car **once**.
The doors cannot be opened from the outside.
Alarm system and passenger compartment monitoring are switched on.

If a person or animal remains in the vehicle:

▷ Quickly lock car **twice**:
The doors cannot be opened from the outside.
The passenger compartment monitoring is switched off.

Unlocking the door with the inner door handle

Any person remaining in the locked car can open the door with the inner door handle:

1. Pull inner door handle once to unlock door lock.
2. Pull inner door handle again to open door.

Note

▷ Inform any person remaining in the car that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

Emergency operation – opening

▷ Unlock the driver's door with the key at the door lock.
Open door within 20 seconds and insert the ignition key into the ignition lock within 10 seconds to prevent the alarm system from being triggered.

Note on operation

If the door is not opened within approx. 20 seconds, automatic relocking takes place. The alarm system will be triggered by the next unlocking of the door:

▷ Insert the ignition key into the ignition lock to switch off the alarm system.

Emergency operation – closing

▷ Lock the driver's door with the key at the door lock.
If there is a defect in the central locking system, all functioning elements of the central locking system will be locked.
The alarm system is switched on.
The passenger compartment monitoring system is switched off.

The fault should be remedied immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Indication by emergency flasher and alarm horn

If the **remote control** is used for unlocking or locking, a response is provided by the emergency flasher:

- Unlocking – single flash.
- Locking – double flash.
- Locking twice – continuous illumination for approx. 2 seconds. The passenger compartment monitoring is switched off.

Central locking switch

The central locking switch on the dashboard lets you lock and unlock both doors electrically.

Note

If the doors are locked with the key or remote control, they can not be opened by pressing the central locking switch.

Locking

▷ Press the rocker-switch.
Indicator light lights up if ignition is on.

Unlocking

▷ Press the rocker-switch.
Indicator light goes out.

If the doors were locked with the central locking switch, they can be opened by pulling the inner door handle:

1. Pull inner door handle once to unlock door lock.
2. Pull inner door handle again to open door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic door locking

Your authorized Porsche dealer can program diverse types of automatic door locking in the control unit of the central locking system.

Type 1

Doors lock automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Type 2

Doors lock automatically when a speed of 3 - 6 mph (5 - 10 km/h) is exceeded.

Type 3

Doors lock automatically when the ignition is switched on. If doors are opened with the engine running, they lock again automatically when a speed of 3 - 6 mph (5 - 10 km/h) is exceeded.

Type 4

The doors do not lock automatically.

Note

Automatically locked doors can be unlocked with the central locking button or opened by pulling on the inside door handle twice.

On vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus, the PCM can be used to activate automatic door locking.

▷ Please see the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

Warning!

In an emergency situation where you need to exit the car through an automatically locked door, remember the following procedure to open the door.

▷ Unlock the doors by pressing the central locking button **or**

▷ pull the inside door handle **twice** to open the door.

Fault indication

A double **horn signal** during locking indicates a defect in the central locking or alarm system.

▷ Have the defect remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Overload protection

If the central locking system is operated more than ten times within a minute, further operation is blocked for 30 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A - *Light-emitting diode for alarm system*

Alarm System, Passenger Compartment Monitoring

This device complies with:
Part 15 of the FCC Rules
RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.
Such modification could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Warning!

Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by Porsche could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

The alarm system and passenger compartment monitoring system are switched on when the doors are locked with the key or remote control.

▷ Please see the chapter "CENTRAL LOCKING IN CARS WITH ALARM SYSTEM" on Page 21.

Unlocking the vehicle by using the key in the door lock and opening the door may activate the alarm system within 10 seconds.

Note

The passenger compartment monitoring system is always switched off when the convertible top is open.

Switching off the alarm system if it is triggered accidentally

▷ Unlock the vehicle with the remote control by pressing button **1**.

The alarm system and passenger compartment monitoring system are switched off automatically when the doors are unlocked.

Function indication

If the alarm system is activated, light-emitting diode **A** in the central locking switch flashes.

If, after locking, the light-emitting diode does not flash or, after ten seconds, it emits double flashes, then **not** all alarm contacts are closed. Additionally, a brief horn signal sounds.

When the doors are unlocked, the alarm system and passenger compartment monitoring system are switched off and the light-emitting diode goes off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the alarm is armed, the following areas are monitored

- Doors
- Front and rear lids
- Convertible-top lock
- Glove compartment
- Passenger compartment

If one of these alarm contacts is interrupted, the alarm horn sounds for approximately 3 minutes. Additionally, the emergency flasher flashes and the passenger compartment light lightes for approximately five minutes.
When the alarm is triggered, the light-emitting diode changes over to double flashes.

In order not to limit the action range of the passenger compartment monitoring system:

▷ Do not fold the seat backrests forward.

Deactivating the passenger compartment monitoring system for one locking process

If a person or animal remains in the car while it is locked, the passenger compartment monitoring system must be switched off.

▷ Quickly lock car **twice**.
The doors are locked but can be opened from the inside:

1. Pull inner door handle once to unlock door lock.
2. Pull inner door handle again to open door.

Note

▷ Inform any person remaining in the car that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

Fault indication

A double **horn signal** during locking indicates a defect in the central locking or alarm system.

▷ Have the defect remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A - *Power window in driver's door*
B - *Power window in passenger's door*

Power Windows

Warning!

Risk of injury when the door windows close. This applies especially if the windows are closed with the one-touch operation, because with this function the window goes up automatically.

▷ Make sure that fingers, hands, arms or other parts are not in the way when the windows are closed.

▷ Remove the ignition key to shut off power to the window switches when the vehicle is not attended by a responsible person. Uninformed persons could injure themselves by operating the power windows.

▷ In case of danger, release the button on the car key immediately.

▷ Do not leave children in the car unattended.

Risk of an accident.

▷ Do not put anything on or near the windows that may interfere with the driver's vision.

Readiness for operation of power windows

– When the ignition is switched on (engine switched on or off) **or**

– with doors closed and ignition key withdrawn, but only until door is first opened.
One-touch operation for closing the door windows is available only when the ignition is switched on.

Opening/closing windows

The two rocker switches **A** and **B** in the driver's door and the switch in the passenger's door have a two-stage function:

Opening

▷ Press the rocker switch down to the first stage until the window has reached the desired position.

Closing

▷ Press the rocker switch upwards to the first stage until the window has reached the desired position.

One-touch operation

▷ Press the rocker switch upwards or downwards to the second stage.
Window moves to its final position.
Press again to stop the window in the desired position.

One-touch operation for closing the passenger's window is available once the window is approximately half-way closed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Anti-crushing protection

If a side window is blocked during closing, it will stop and open again by about an inch.

Warning!

Risk of serious personal injuries.
If the rocker switch is pressed again within 10 seconds of the window being blocked, the window will close with its full closing force. Anti-crushing protection is disabled.

▷ Once the anti-crushing protection acts to stop the window and opens it slightly, do not press the rocker switch again within 10 seconds without checking to make sure that nothing is blocking the path of the window.
The window will close with full closing force.

One-touch operation is disabled for 10 seconds after blockage of a side window.

Automatic window lowering

▷ Please see the chapter “DOORS” on Page 18.

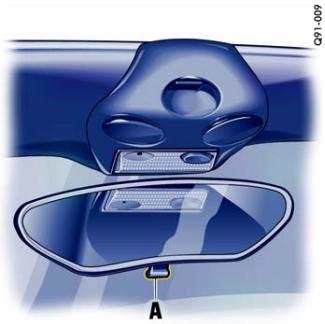
▷ Please see the chapter “CONVERTIBLE TOP” on Page 182.

Storing end position of the windows

If the battery is disconnected and reconnected, the windows will not be raised automatically when the door is closed.

1. Close the windows with the rocker switch **once**.
2. Press the rocker switch upwards again to store the end position of the windows in the control unit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Mirrors

Inside mirror

When the mirror is being adjusted, the anti-glare lever **A** must point forward.

Basic position: lever forward

Anti-glare position: lever back

Door mirrors

Before driving the vehicle, adjust the outside and inside mirrors.
It is important for safe driving that you have clear, unobstructed vision to the rear.

⚠ Warning!

Risk of an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Do not put anything on or near the windows or the mirrors that may interfere with the driver's vision.

Risk of damage to the door mirrors when washing the vehicle in a car wash.

▷ Fold in door mirrors before using the car wash.

Adjusting door mirrors

1. Switch on ignition.
2. By turning the control switch **A**, select the driver's side or the passenger's side.
3. Move the door mirror glasses in the appropriate direction by tilting the control switch.

If the electrical adjustment facility fails

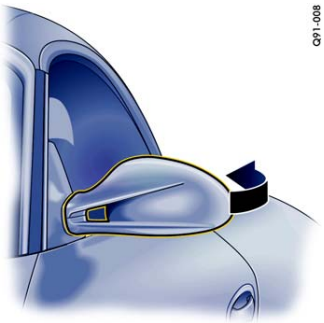
▷ Adjust mirror by pressing on the mirror face.

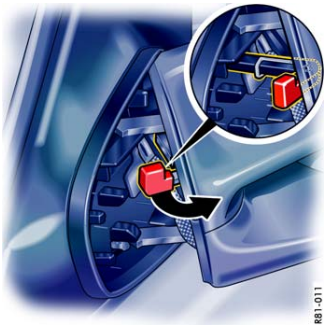
Automatically swivelling down mirror on the passenger's side

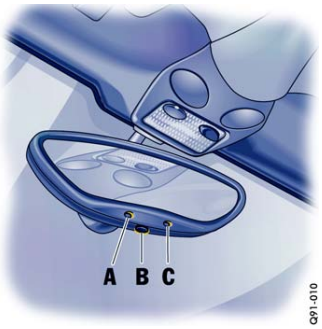
▷ Please see the chapter "PARKING AIDS" on Page 70.

▷ Please see the chapter "SEAT MEMORY" on Page 35.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine







Folding in door mirrors

Warning!

Danger of injury to fingers if the mirror accidentally flips back when being folded in.

▷ Exercise extreme caution when folding in mirror by hand. Do not let go of the mirror before the locking lever is locked or the mirror is fully unfolded.

1. Push mirror towards the door window and continue to hold it (high spring force).
2. Swivel the locking lever up to the stop and slowly let go of the mirror.

Unfolding door mirrors

1. Push mirror towards the door window and continue to hold it (high spring force). The locking lever disengages automatically.
2. Move mirror back to unfolded position by hand. Do not let go of the mirror beforehand.

A - *Sensor*
B - *Switch for automatic anti-glare operation*
C - *Light-emitting diode*

Automatic Anti-Glare Interior Mirror and Door Mirror

Sensors on the front and rear sides of the interior mirror measure the incident light.
The mirrors automatically change to anti-glare position or revert to their normal state, depending on the light intensity.
When reverse gear is selected, automatic anti-glare operation is switched off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

The incident light in the area of the sensors must not be restricted, e.g. by stickers on the windshield.

Switching off the automatic anti-glare operation

▷ Press switch **B**.
Light-emitting diode **C** goes out.

Switching on the automatic anti-glare operation

▷ Press switch **B**.
Light-emitting diode **C** lights up.

Warning!

Risk of injury. Electrolyte fluid can emerge from a broken mirror glass.
This fluid irritates the skin and eyes.

▷ If the electrolyte fluid should come into contact with the eyes or skin, immediately rinse it off with clean water.
See a doctor if necessary.

Risk of damage to the paintwork, leather and plastic parts. Electrolyte fluid can be removed only while it is still wet.

▷ Clean the affected parts with water.

Rear Window Defogger, Door Mirror Heating

The mirror heater is ready for operation when the ignition is on.

Switching on

▷ Press button.
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.

After approx. 15 minutes, the heater switches off automatically.
The heater can be switched back on by pressing the button again.

Switching off

▷ Press button.
The light-emitting diode in the button goes out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat Adjustment and Head Restraints

Warning!

The seat may move unexpectedly if you attempt to adjust while driving. This could cause sudden loss of control, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Do not adjust seats while the vehicle is in motion.
The backrest locks must be engaged at all times while the vehicle is in motion.

Safety belts only offer protection when the backrest is upright and the belts are properly positioned on the body.
Improperly positioned safety belts or safety belts worn by passengers in an excessively reclined position can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

▷ Do not operate the car with the driver or passenger backrests excessively reclined (see "Seat position").

Risk of injury if persons or animals are in the movement range of the seat during seat adjustment.

▷ Adjust the seat so that no-one is put at risk.

Caution!

Risk of damage to windshield, sun visor, etc. when the seat is adjusted or folded back or forward.

▷ Adjust the seat so that the seat backrest is not in contact with any other object.

The driver and passenger seats provide integrated head restraints in the backrests. The head restraints are not adjustable.

Warning!

All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints and backrests, respectively, are placed in their proper positions so that the risk of neck injuries is minimized in the event of a crash.

For proper positioning of the head restraint, the seatback's inclination should be adjusted such that the head restraint is in an upright position. Driver and passenger should be seated upright and in the center of their seats.

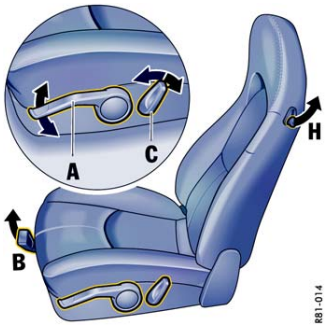
Seat position

An ergonomically correct sitting position is important for safe and fatigue-free driving.
We recommend the following procedure for adjusting the driver's seat to suit individual requirements:

1. **Vehicles with manual transmission:**
   Adjust the seat until, with the clutch pedal fully depressed, your leg remains at a slight angle.

   Vehicles with Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK):
   Adjust the seat until, with your left foot on the footrest, your left leg remains at a slight angle.
2. Rest your outstretched arm on the steering wheel.
   Set the backrest angle (not applicable for Sports bucket seat) and the steering-wheel position so that your wrist rests on the outer rim of the steering wheel. At the same time, the shoulders must still be in noticeable contact with the backrest.
3. Adjust the seat height (not applicable for Sports bucket seat) to give yourself enough headroom and a good overview of the vehicle.
4. Electrically adjustable seat:
   Adjust the seat angle until your thighs rest lightly on the seat cushion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Standard seat/sports seat

A Seat height

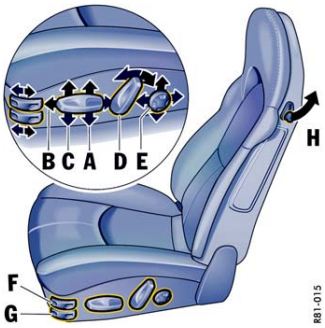
▷ Use lever **A** in a pumping movement:
Upwards – seat moves upwards
Downwards – seat moves downwards

B Fore and aft

▷ Raise locking lever **B**.
Move seat to desired position and release lever.
Ensure that the seat engages correctly.

C Backrest angle

▷ Operate switch **C** until the desired backrest angle is reached.



Comfort seat with driver seat memory/ Adaptive sports seat with driver seat memory

▷ Press the switch in the direction indicated by the arrow until the desired setting is reached.

A Seat height adjustment

B Fore-and-aft position adjustment

C Seat angle adjustment

D Backrest angle adjustment

E Lumbar support (pelvis and spinal column support)

To permit a relaxed sitting posture, the backrest curvature is continuously adjustable in vertical and horizontal directions for individual pelvis and spinal column support.

▷ Press the switch in the direction indicated by the arrow until the desired backrest curvature is reached.

F Adjusting the backrest side bolsters (adaptive sports seat only)

▷ Push forward or pull backward switch **F** until the side bolsters are adjusted to the shape of the body.

G Adjusting the seat cushion side bolsters (adaptive sports seat only)

▷ Push forward or pull backward switch **G** until the side bolsters are adjusted to the shape of the body.

Seat backrest

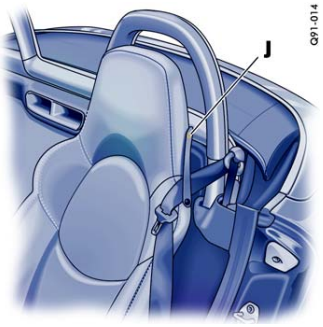
Folding forward

▷ Pull up lever **H** in the side part of the backrest and fold the backrest forward.

Folding back

▷ Tilt back and engage the backrest so that it cannot tip forward when the car is braked.

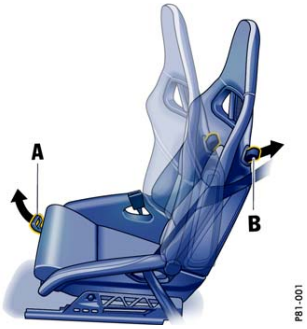
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Sports seat/adaptive sports seat only

The seat belt can be fixed to the seat backrest with the retaining strap, so that it can be reached more easily for buckling up.

▷ Release button **J** at the top of the retaining strap, insert the seat belt and fasten the strap once more.



Sports bucket seat

▶ **Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.**
The Sports bucket seat cannot be equipped with the LATCH system.

A Fore and aft adjustment

▷ Raise locking lever **A**.
Move seat to desired position and release lever.
Ensure that the seat engages correctly.

B Backrest

Folding forward

▷ Pull loop **B** in the side part of the backrest and fold the backrest forward.

Folding back

▷ Tilt back and engage the backrest so that it cannot tip forward when the car is braked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

M - *Memory button*
1 - *Key button*
2, 3 - *Person buttons*

Seat Memory

Individual seat and door mirror settings can be stored and recalled for the driver's position.
You cannot store the position of the side bolsters of the adaptive sports seat.

Further individual setting options are available in vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus.

▷ Please observe the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

⚠ Warning!

Risk of crushing due to uncontrolled recall of a seat setting.

▷ Cancel automatic adjustment by pressing any of the seat adjustment buttons.

▷ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.

Operation with person buttons 2, 3

Storing seat position

1. Switch on ignition.
   Reverse gear must not be engaged.
2. Set the desired seat and door-mirror positions.
3. Keep memory button **M** depressed and also press person button **2 or 3** until an audible signal confirms that the position has been stored.
   The individual setting is now stored under the desired person button.

Recalling seat position

The seat position can only be called up when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Switch on the ignition **or** open the driver's door.
2. Press person button until the seat has reached its final position.
   The setting of door mirrors and lumbar support will be completed even if the person button is not kept depressed.

Note

Automatic seat adjustment can be interrupted immediately by releasing the button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operating with the remote control of the vehicle key

Each remote control (up to six) can be assigned an individual seat and door mirror position.
The stored seat and door mirror position is set automatically when the vehicle is unlocked using the corresponding remote control.

Storing seat position

1. Switch the ignition on with the desired car key. Reverse gear must not be engaged.
2. Set the desired seat and door-mirror positions.
3. Keep memory button **M** depressed and also press key button **1** until an audible signal confirms that the position has been stored. The individual setting is now assigned to this remote control and to the key button. It is necessary to wait for at least 15 seconds between locking and unlocking the door.

Storing individual lowered position of the passenger's door mirror as a parking aid

Once the driver's seat setting has been stored, an individual lowered position of the passenger's door mirror may be stored for driving in reverse:

1. Apply the handbrake.
2. Switch the ignition on with the desired car key.
3. Engage reverse gear.
4. Select passenger side with mirror switch. The passenger's mirror swivels downwards.
5. Set passenger's door mirror to desired final position.
6. Keep memory button **M** depressed and also press key button **1** until an audible signal confirms that the position has been stored. The individual setting is now assigned to this remote control and to the key button.

Recalling seat position

▷ Unlock the locked vehicle or the luggage compartment with the remote control. The stored seat position is automatically set.

The seat position assigned to a remote control can also be recalled with the key button **1** if the corresponding key was used to switch on the ignition.

If no seat position has been assigned to a remote control, the key button will not work.

Note on operation

Automatic seat adjustment can be interrupted immediately:

▷ by switching on the ignition,

▷ by pressing the central locking button,

▷ by pressing any memory or seat adjustment button.

Clearing the stored seat position

1. Switch the ignition on with the desired car key.
2. Press memory button twice and key button **1** once consecutively.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A - *Seat heating, left*
B - *Seat heating, right*

Heated Seats

Two-stage seat heating is ready for operation when the engine is running.

The yellow light-emitting diodes in the button show witch stage is currently activated.

Switching on

High heating power

▷ Press button once.
Both yellow light-emitting diodes in the button light up.

Low heating power

▷ Press button twice.
One yellow light-emitting diode in the button lights up.

Switching off

▷ Press button as often as necessary until the light-emitting diodes go out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat Ventilation

The three-stage seat ventilation is ready for operation when the engine is running and from an ambient cabin temperature of 58 °F (15 °C).

The three stages are controlled with the buttons on the control panel for the air conditioning.

The blue light-emitting diodes in the buttons show which stage is currently activated.

Note

The full effect of the seat ventilation can be achieved only if you are wearing breathable clothing.

Seat ventilation and seat heating can be used at the same time and provide excellent seating comfort when used in the right combination.

▷ Do not use protective seat covers.

Switching on seat ventilation

High ventilation

▷ Press button **once**.
Three light-emitting diodes light up.

Medium ventilation

▷ Press button **twice**.
Two light-emitting diodes light up.

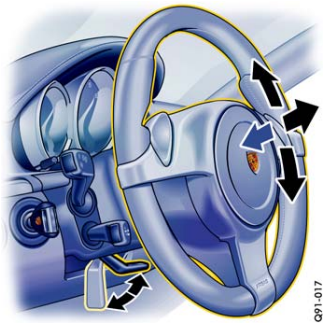
A - *Seat ventilation, left*
B - *Seat ventilation, right*

Low ventilation

▷ Press button **three times**.
One light-emitting diode lights up.

Switching off seat ventilation

▷ Press button as often as necessary until all light-emitting diodes go out.



Steering Wheel Adjustment

Warning!

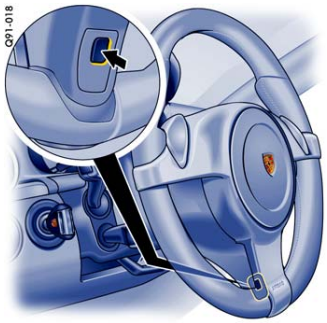
Risk of accident.
The steering wheel may move further than desired if you attempt to adjust it when driving.
You can lose control of the vehicle, causing serious personal injury or death.

▷ Do not adjust the steering wheel when driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjusting steering wheel height and longitudinal direction

1. Insert ignition key fully into ignition lock.
2. Push the locking lever downwards.
3. Adjust steering wheel to fit the chosen backrest angle and your seat position by moving the steering wheel up or down and longitudinally.
4. Swivel locking lever back until you feel it engage.
   If necessary, move steering wheel slightly longitudinally.



Steering Wheel Heating

The steering wheel heating can be switched on and off with the button on the rear of the steering wheel when the ignition is switched on.

Switching on steering wheel heating

▷ Press button.
The message “Steering wheel heating ON” is displayed on the on-board computer for 2 seconds.

Switching off steering wheel heating

▷ Press button.
The message “Steering wheel heating OFF” is displayed on the on-board computer for 2 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Functional Steering Wheel

Warning!

There is a danger of accident if you set or operate the on-board computer, radio, navigation system, telephone or other equipment when driving.
Operating these devices while driving could distract you from traffic and cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

- ▷ Operate these components while driving only if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely.
- ▷ Carry out any complicated operating or setting procedures only while the vehicle is stationary.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, you can use the function keys of the multi-functional steering wheel to operate the following Porsche communication systems:

- PCM
- Telephone
- Radio with CD-Drive
- CD-Audio

Readiness for operation of multi-functional steering wheel

The multi-functional steering wheel is ready for operation when the ignition **and** PCM are switched on.

Operating the function keys

- ▷ Please read the separate PCM operating instructions before operating the function keys.

The rotary knobs at the top left and right of the steering wheel can also be pressed.

Turn volume control
Upwards – increase volume.
Downwards – decrease volume.
Press volume control
To switch volume/mute on and off.

Turn rotary knob
To select/mark function in the PCM within a menu. To do this, turn the rotary knob upward or downward.
Press rotary knob
To activate selected function.

Press screen button
To call the stored PCM function.
The button can be assigned the desired function in the PCM.

Press Back button
To move back in the PCM menu.

Press Handset Pickup button
To accept a telphone call.

Press Handset Hangup button
To end or refuse a telephone call.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sun Visors

▷ Swing the sun visors down to prevent glare from the front.

Vanity mirror

The vanity mirror on the rear of the sun visor is covered by a lid.

Warning!

Risk of injury in an accident or risk of damage to mirror lid and convertible top.

▷ Keep the lid closed while driving and when closing the convertible top.

Risk of damage.

▷ Do not force the lid beyond its end position.

The vanity mirror illumination is switched on automatically when the cover is opened (**arrow**).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belts

Warning!

Always make sure your and your passenger's safety belts are properly fastened while the vehicle is in motion.
Failure to follow safety belt warnings may result in serious personal injury or death.

- For your and your passenger's protection, use safety belts at all times while the vehicle is in motion.
- Use appropriate child restraint systems for all small children.

Proper wearing of safety belts

- Safety belts must be positioned on the body as to restrain the upper body and lap from sliding forward. Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury or death in case of an accident.
- The shoulder belt should always rest on your upper body. The shoulder belt should never be worn behind your back or under your arm.
- For maximum effectiveness, the lap belt should be worn low across the hips.
- Pregnant women should position the belt as low as possible across the pelvis. Make sure it is not pressing against the abdomen.
- Belts should not be worn twisted.
- Do not wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc. as these may cause injury.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with proper positioning of belts.
- Belts must not rub against sharp objects or damage may occur to the belt.
- Two occupants should never share the same belt at the same time.

Care and maintenance

- Keep belt buckles free of any obstruction that may prevent a secure locking.
- Belts that have been subjected to excessive stretch forces in an accident must be inspected or replaced to ensure their continued effectiveness in restraining you.
  The same applies to belt tensioner systems which have been triggered.
  In addition, the anchor points of the belts should be checked.
- If safety belts do not work properly, see your authorized Porsche dealer immediately.
- If the belts show damage to webbing, bindings, buckles or retractors, they should be replaced to ensure safe operation.
- Do not modify or disassemble the safety belts in your vehicle.
- The belts must be kept clean or the retractors may not work properly.
  Please see the chapter "CAR CARE INSTRUCTIONS" on Page 213.
- Never bleach or dye safety belts.
- Do not allow safety belts to retract until they are completely dry after cleaning or this may cause damage to the belt.

Belt tensioner

Depending on the force of an impact, fastened safety belts are tightened in an accident.

The belt tensioners are triggered in:

- Front, side and rear impacts of sufficient severity.
- In cases of vehicle rollover.

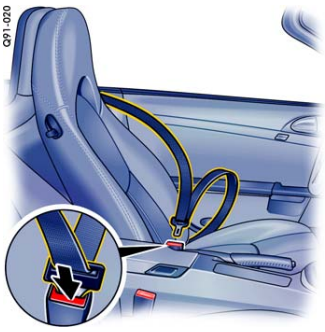
Note

The belt-tensioner system can be triggered only once; the system must be replaced afterward.

If there is a fault in the belt-tensioner system, the airbag warning light lights up.

Work may be performed on the belt-tensioner system only by an authorized Porsche dealer.
Smoke is released when the belt tensioners are triggered. This does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Safety Belt Warning System

An audio-visual warning system is interconnected with the driver's safety belt.

Every time the ignition is turned on, the gong will sound for about 6 seconds to remind driver and passenger to buckle up.
In addition, the gong will sound for approx. 90 seconds if vehicle speed exceeds 15 mph/24 km/h. The safety belt warning lights in the instrument panel and on-board computer will go off as soon as the driver has buckled up.

Inertia reel retractor

The combination lap/shoulder belt with inertia reel locking mechanism adjusts automatically to your size and movements as long as the pull on the belt is slow.

Rapid deceleration during hard braking or a collision locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or in a sharp curve, otherwise, the shoulder belt will not inhibit your upper body movement.

Fastening the safety belt

- ▷ Assume a comfortable sitting position.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "SEAT POSITION" on Page 32.
- ▷ The shoulder belt should always rest on your upper body. The shoulder belt should never be worn behind your back or under your arm.
- ▷ Grasp belt and pull the belt in a continuous slow motion across your chest and lap.
- ▷ Insert belt tongue into buckle on inboard side of seat. Push down until it securely locks with an audible click. Pull the belt to check.
- ▷ Pull shoulder section to make sure belt fits snugly across the pelvis.
- ▷ Belts should fit snugly across the pelvis and chest. Make sure there is no slack in the belt.

Releasing the safety belt

- ▷ Push in release button (**arrow**) on buckle. Belt tongue will spring out of buckle.
- ▷ To release a latched belt, lean back to take the body pressure off the belt.
- ▷ To store lap/shoulder belt, allow the belt to retract as you guide the latch to its stowed position.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "AUTOMATIC LOCKING RETRACTOR" on Page 52.

Cleaning the safety belts

If it becomes necessary to clean the belts, you can use any mild washing agent. Allow the belts to dry prior to retracting, but avoid direct sunlight.

- ▷ Only use suitable cleaners. If unsuitable cleaners are used or any attempt is made to dye or bleach the belts, the webbing may be weakened and thus constitute a safety risk.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbag Systems

The airbags in combination with the safety belts make up a safety system which offers the driver and the passenger the greatest known protection from injuries in case of accident.
Your vehicle is equipped with a weight sensing system for the passenger's seat in accordance with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208.

Even if your vehicle is equipped with airbags, **the safety belts must be worn at all times**, because the front airbag system is only deployed by frontal collisions with an impact of sufficient severity.

Below the deployment threshold of the airbag system, and during types of collisions which do not cause the actuation of the system, the safety belts provide the primary protection to the occupants when correctly worn.
Therefore, all persons within the vehicle must wear safety belts at all times (in many states, state law requires the use of safety belts).

▷ Please see the chapter "SAFETY BELTS" on Page 42.

The **front airbags** are located under the padded steering wheel panel on the driver's side and, on the passenger's side, in the dashboard.
The **side airbags** are installed on the side in the seat backrests.
The **head airbags** are installed in the door linings.

⚠ **Danger!**

To provide optimal occupant protection, airbags must inflate at very high speed. If you are not wearing your safety belt or are too close to the airbag when it is deployed, inflating airbags can result in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Make sure there are no people, animals or objects between the driver or passenger and the area into which the airbag inflates.

▷ Sit back as far from the dashboard or steering wheel as is practical, while still maintaining full vehicle control.

▷ Always hold the steering wheel by the outer rim. Never rest your hands on the airbag panel.

▷ **Always fasten seat belts** because triggering of the airbag system depends on the force and angle of impact.

▷ Do not transport heavy objects on or in front of the passenger's seat. These could impair the function of the airbag, the seat belts, and weight sensing.

▷ Do not hang objects (e.g. jackets, coats, coat hangers) over the backrest.

▷ Always keep the lid of the door storage compartment closed. Objects must not protrude out of the door storage compartment.

▷ No changes may be made to the wiring or components of the airbag system.

▷ Do not add any additional coverings or stickers to the steering wheel or in the area of the passenger airbag, side airbags and head airbags. Doing so may adversely affect the functioning of the airbag system or cause harm to the occupants if the airbag system should deploy. Do not use protective seat covers.

▷ Do not modify the seat coverings. Do not attach additional cushions, protective coverings, or pillows to the passenger's seat. Do not affix things to the passenger's seat or cover it with other materials. Do not cover the back of the backrest. Do not make changes to the passenger's seat and to the seat base frame.

▷ Do not undertake any wiring for electrical accessory equipment in the vicinity of the airbag wiring harnesses. Doing so may disable the airbag system or cause inadvertent inflation.

▷ If the warning light comes on, the airbag system should be repaired immediately by your authorized Porsche dealer.

▷ Always keep feet in the footwell while driving. Do not put feet on the dashboard or the seat area. Do not lean against the inside of the door or outside the window while the vehicle is moving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▷ Using accessories not approved by Porsche can cause the weight sensing system to be impaired.
- ▷ Do not squeeze objects, such as the fire extinguisher, or first aid kit under the seat.
- ▷ Only have seats removed and installed by an authorized Porsche dealer so that weight sensing components will not be damaged.
- ▷ Give your passenger all of the information in this chapter.

Note

Airbag components (e.g. steering wheel, door lining, seats) may be disassembled only by an authorized Porsche dealer.

When disposing of a used airbag unit, our safety instructions must be followed. These instructions can be obtained at any authorized Porsche dealer.

Function of the airbag system

Airbags are a supplemental safety system. Your primary protection comes from your safety belts.

The front airbags are triggered during a frontal collision of sufficient force and direction.
In the event of a side impact of corresponding force, the side airbag on the impact side is triggered.

The inflation process generates the amount of gas required to fill the airbags at the necessary pressure in fractions of a second.

Airbags help to protect the head and upper body, while simultaneously damping the motion of the driver and passenger in the impact direction in the event of a frontal impact or side impact.

In order to help provide protection in severe collisions which can cause death and serious injury, airbags must inflate extremely rapidly. Such high speed inflation has a negative but unavoidable side effect, which is that it can and does cause injuries, including facial and arm abrasions, bruising and broken bones. You can help minimize such injuries by always wearing your safety belts.

There are many types of accidents in which airbags are not expected to deploy. These include accidents where the airbags would provide no benefit, such as a rear impact against your vehicle. Other accidents where the airbags are designed not to deploy are those where the risk of injury from the airbag deployment could exceed any protective benefits, such as in low speed accidents or higher speed accidents where the vehicle decelerates over a long time. Since airbag deployment does not occur in all accidents, this further emphasizes the need for you and your passenger to always wear safety belts.

Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module. This module will record the use of the seat belt restraint system by the driver and passenger when the airbags and/or belt tensioner work.

Advanced Airbag

Your vehicle is equipped with a weight sensing system for the passenger's seat in accordance with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. Depending on the weight acting on the passenger's seat, the passenger's airbag will automatically be switched on and off.

Depending on the angle and force of impact, the passenger's airbag which is activated will be triggered during a collision.

Precondition for switching the passenger's airbag on and off, depending on weight:

- Vehicles equipped with key-operated airbag deactivation device:
  Switch position AUTO.
- Ignition key is inserted.

Improper handling of the weight sensing system can unintentionally impair switching the passenger's airbag off and on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat adjustment for the passenger's seat

Danger!

Safety belts only offer protection when the backrest is upright and the belts are properly positioned on the body. Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

▷ Do not operate the car with the driver or passenger backrest excessively reclined.

▷ Porsche recommends the use of L.A.T.C.H. (**L**ower **A**ncorage and **T**ether for **Ch**ildren) equipped Porsche child seat.
Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.
The Sports bucket seat cannot be equipped with the LATCH system.

If the seat is in an extreme position (e.g., the backrest is in contact with the engine compartment wall), the backrest can warp. Warping of the backrest can lead to malfunctions.

▷ Correct the seat adjustment.
Ensure that the seat is not jammed and is self-supporting.
Ensure that the backrest is in the upright position.

▷ Do not transport a load and objects behind and under the passenger's seat.
If the load or objects are under the seat, it can cause malfunctions.

If the weight on the passenger's seat is reduced significantly, e.g., by supporting weight on the armrest, the passenger's airbag can be switched off.

▷ Select an upright seat position, and do not support weight on the armrests or lean out of the window.
Always keep feet in the footwell while driving. Do not put feet on the dashboard or the seat area. Do not lean against the inside of the door or outside the window while the vehicle is moving.

If the passenger's seat is warped significantly, a message is displayed on the on-board computer:

▷ Correct the seat adjustment.

▷ Please see the chapter "WARNINGS ON THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND THE ON-BOARD COMPUTER" on Page 162.

Vehicle modifications to accommodate persons with disabilities

Because modifications to your vehicle could compromise your advanced airbag system, please call 1-800-PORSCHE prior to having your vehicle modified.

Automatic deactivation of the passenger's airbags

Danger!

The use of a child restraint system in the passenger seat can result in serious personal injury or death to the child from an airbag deployment.

▷ Please see the chapter "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR LAMP DOES NOT LIGHT UP" on Page 47.

▷ Before transporting a child on the passenger's seat:
Please see the chapter "CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS" on Page 50.

▷ **Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.**

– When an **up to one-year old child** is seated in the child restraint system, the front airbag is automatically deactivated on the passenger side.

– When an adult is seated in the front seat the front airbag remains active on the passenger's side.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp

Note on operation

Although not desired, it can occur in the case of heavier children that the passenger's airbag remains active or, in the case of very light adults or young persons, that the passenger airbag is deactivated.

The condition of the passenger's front airbag is shown by the indicator lamp.

If in doubt:

▷ Please see the chapter "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR LAMP DOES NOT LIGHT UP" on Page 47.

▷ Please see the chapter "KEY-OPERATED AIRBAG DEACTIVATION DEVICE" on Page 49.

▷ Please see the chapter "CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS" on Page 50.

▷ Please see the chapter "LATCH SYSTEM CHILD SEAT BRACKET ON THE PASSENGER'S SEAT" on Page 54.

Note

▷ After inserting the ignition key, the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF warning light lights up for a few seconds as a bulb check.

PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up

– The passenger's airbag is switched off.

PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp does not light up

– The passenger's airbag is active and ready for operation.

– If the passenger's seat is not occupied, the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp will also not light up, even though the passenger's airbag is switched off.

⚠ Danger!

Risk of serious personal injury or death due to the passenger airbag triggering unintentionally.

When the ignition key is insterted and the up to one-year old child is seated in the child restraint system on the passenger's seat, the indicator lamp "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" must be on.

If the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" indicator lamp does not light up, it could indicate a fault in the system.
In this case:

▷ On vehicles **with** key-operated airbag deactivation device: Switch to position OFF.

▷ On vehicles **without** key-operated airbag deactivation device: Do not drive.

▷ Have the fault remedied at your nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

The key switch for switching off the passenger's airbag in combination with the LATCH attachment bracket are not installed at the factory. They can be retrofitted.

▷ Please see your authorized Porsche dealer.

Warning light and warning message

Faults are indicated by a warning light in the instrument panel and a message on the on-board computer.

▷ Please see the chapter "WARNINGS ON THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND THE ON-BOARD COMPUTER" on Page 162.

▷ **In the following cases you should immediately consult an authorized Porsche dealer in order to assure the airbag system is functioning properly:**

– If the warning light does not light up when the ignition key is inserted **or**

– If the warning light does not go out once the engine is running **or**

– If the warning light appears while driving.

Airbag maintenance

In order to ensure long-term functioning, the airbag system must be inspected by an authorized Porsche dealer at the intervals recommended in your Maintenance Booklet.

Important information

If you sell your Porsche, notify the purchaser that the vehicle is equipped with airbags, and refer them to the chapter, "Airbag Systems", in the Owner's Manual (safety and disposal rules).

Further information on the airbag system can be found on stickers attached to the sun visors.

For special recommendations on the use of child restraints:

▷ Please see the chapter "CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS" on Page 50.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Key-operated airbag deactivation device

In case your vehicle is equipped with LATCH, you can switch off (OFF) the passenger's front airbag manually. In the automatic mode (AUTO), the airbag will be switched on or off automatically depending on the weight on the passenger seat.

▷ Switch off the passenger's airbag on the key switch using the vehicle key.

A Switch position AUTO – passenger's front airbag is active

B Switch position OFF – passenger's front airbag is switched off

PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp

Danger!

Risk of serious personal injury or death for passenger if passenger's airbag remains switched off after the child restraint system is removed.

▷ Make sure that the key switch is switched to AUTO once the child seat has been removed, in order to provide protection to the adult occupants.

Warning light "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF"

If the airbag on the passenger's side is switched off:

– Warning light "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" is continuously lit when the ignition key is inserted.

Danger!

Risk of serious personal injury or death from the passenger's airbag.
If the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" warning light is not lit when the ignition key is inserted and the Airbag OFF switch is switched to the OFF-Position, this could indicate a fault in the system.

▷ Do not install a child restraint system on the passenger's seat.

▷ Have the fault remedied immediately. Please see your authorized Porsche dealer.

Note

▷ Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.

The key switch for switching off the passenger's airbag in combination with the LATCH attachment bracket are not installed at the factory. They can be retrofitted (not on vehicles with Sports bucket seats).

▷ Please see your authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Child Restraint Systems

▷ Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.
The Sports bucket seat cannot be equipped with the LATCH system.

Porsche recommends that all infants and children be restrained in child restraint systems at all times while the vehicle is in motion in accordance with applicable laws.

Use only child restraint systems with the LATCH-system recommended by Porsche. These systems have been tested and adjusted to the interior of your Porsche and the appropriate child weight groups. Other systems have not been tested and could entail an increased risk of injury or death.

You can obtain child seats that are LATCH compatible at your authorized Porsche dealer.

▷ Always see the separate installation instructions for your child seat.

The use of infant or child restraints is required by law in all 50 states of the U.S. and all Canadian provinces. The child restraint system should be one that complies with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and should be secured by a lap belt or lap belt portion of a lapshoulder belt or for child seats equipped with the LATCH sytem (**L**ower **A**nchorage and **T**ether for **Ch**ildren, also known as ISOFIX) to the LATCH anchorages.
A statement by the seat manufacturer of compliance with this standard can be found on the instruction label on the restraint and in the instruction manual provided with the restraint.

⚠ Danger!

The use of a child restraint system in the passenger seat can result in serious personal injury or death to the child from an airbag deployment.
To reduce risk of injury from an inflating airbag in an accident, Porsche strongly recommends:

▷ Please see the chapter "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR LAMP DOES NOT LIGHT UP" on Page 47.

▷ Please see the chapter "CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS" on Page 50.

▷ **Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.**
The Sports bucket seat cannot be equipped with the LATCH system.

Note

The key switch for switching off the passenger's airbag and the LATCH attachment bracket are not installed at the factory. They can be retrofitted (not on vehicles with Sports bucket seats).

▷ Please see your authorized Porsche dealer.

⚠ Danger!

Risk of serious personal injury or death to the child.

▷ Follow all child restraint instructions and warnings in this manual.

– When using an infant or child restraint system, be sure to follow all manufacturer's instructions on installation and use.
– Infants and small children should never be held on the lap, nor should they share a safety belt with another occupant while the vehicle is in motion.
– Children too big for child restraint systems should use regular safety belts. A shoulder belt can be used providing it does not cross the face or the neck of the child.
– Choose a child restraint system according to the weight of the child.
– Child restraint systems that are damaged or have been heavily stressed in an accident must be replaced immediately.
– Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restrains are not properly secured in the vehicle.
– Do not affix things to child restraint systems or cover it with other materials.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Your authorized Porsche dealer will be glad to advise you about the installation possibility for a Porsche child restraint system which allows a key-operated airbag deactivation of the passenger's airbag.
– The key-operated airbag deactivation device installation requires special programming available only from your authorized Porsche dealer.

▷ Please see the chapter "KEY-OPERATED AIRBAG DEACTIVATION DEVICE" on Page 49.

Direction of installation for child restraint systems

Group 0 and 0+: Children up to 29 lbs (13 kg)

Children of this weight must be transported in a restraint system which is installed on the passenger's seat **facing rearward**.

Group I: Children between 20 lbs (9 kg) and 40 lbs

Children of this weight are held in child restraint systems **facing forward**.

Group II: Children in between 33 lbs (15 kg) and 55 lbs (25 kg)

Children of this weight are held in child restraint systems **facing forward**.

Group III: Children in between 49 lbs (22 kg) and 80 lbs (36 kg)

Children of this weight are held in child restraint systems **facing forward**.

▷ The vehicle seat must be adjusted so that it is in its lower rear position.

Using child restraint systems in the passenger seat

▷ Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.

⚠ Danger!

The use of a child restraint system in the passenger seat can result in serious personal injury or death to the child from an airbag deployment.
To reduce risk of injury from an inflating airbag in an accident, Porsche strongly recommends:

▷ Please see the chapter "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR LAMP DOES NOT LIGHT UP" on Page 47.

▷ Please see the chapter "CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS" on Page 50.

▷ **Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.**
The Sports bucket seat cannot be equipped with the LATCH system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Child restraint system for up to one-year old children

– Make sure that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.

– Adjust the passenger's seat as far away from the airbag as possible.

Danger!

Risk of serious personal injury or death due to the passenger airbag triggering unintentionally.

When the ignition is on and the up to one-year old child is seated in the child restraint system on the passenger seat the indicator lamp "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" must be on.

If the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" indicator lamp does not light up, it could indicate a fault in the system.
In this case:

▷ Do not use a child restraint system on the passenger's seat.

▷ On vehicles with key-operated airbag deactivation device: Switch to position OFF.

▷ On vehicles without key-operated airbag deactivation device: Do not drive.

▷ Have the fault remedied at your nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Child restraint system for children older than one year

Your vehicle is equipped with a weight sensing system for the passenger's seat in accordance with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. Depending on the weight acting on the passenger's seat, the passenger's airbag will automatically be switched on or off.

Small adult passengers

Make sure that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp does not light up.

Danger!

Risk of serious personal injury or death due to the passenger airbag not triggering.

When the ignition key is inserted **on and the small adult passenger is seated on the passenger's seat, the indicator lamp "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" must be off.**

If the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" indicator lamp lights up, it could indicate a fault in the system.
In this case:

▷ Do not carry a passenger in the passenger's seat.

▷ Have the fault remedied at the nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Automatic locking retractor

▶ **Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.**
The Sports bucket seat cannot be equipped with the LATCH system.

The safety belt for the passenger is equipped with an automatic locking retractor for securing the child restraint system. When activated, this retractor allows you to securely fasten the child restraint system in place so that inadvertent movements will not occur.

Before transporting a child on the passenger seat:

▷ Please see the chapter "CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS" on Page 50.

Danger!

Risk of serious personal injury or death to the child, when excessive force is acting on the passenger's seat due to the seat belt.
In such cases, the passenger's airbag can be switched on unintentionally.

▷ After fastening the child restraint system, do not adjust the seat.

▷ Check the condition of the passenger's airbag shown by the indicator lamp in the central console.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Activating the automatic locking retractor

1. If a child restraint system must be fastened to the passenger's seat, adjust the passenger's seat as far away from the airbag as possible.
2. Fasten child seat.
3. Pull the safety belt retractor completely out. At this point the locking mechanism is activated.
4. Insert the safety belt tongue into the buckle and make certain that it is properly latched. Make no more adjustments to the seat.
5. Allow the safety belt to retract until it is tight on the child restraint system. You may further tighten the belt by pulling on it to allow more of it to retract.
   Make sure that excessive seat belt forces do not occur by moving the seat with the child seat installed.

Releasing the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt latch.
2. Then make certain that the belt has fully retracted. At this point the automatic locking feature will be disengaged.
   Seek appropriate advice from your authorized Porsche dealer about the possible installation of a Porsche child restraint system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LATCH System

Child seat bracket on the passenger's seat

- **Do not install a child restraint system in the Sports bucket seat.**
  The Sports bucket seat cannot be equipped with the LATCH system.

The key switch for switching off the passenger's airbag and the LATCH attachment bracket are not installed at the factory. They can be retrofitted (not on vehicles with Sports bucket seats).

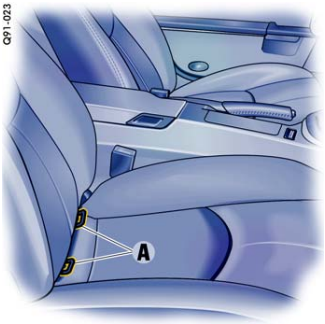
▷ Please see your authorized Porsche dealer.

Porsche recommends the use of a Porsche Child Seat with **L**ower **A**nchorage and **T**ether for **Ch**ildren system (LATCH).
These systems have been tested and adjusted to the interior of your Porsche and the appropriate child weight groups. Other systems have not been tested and could entail an increased risk of injury.

You can obtain child seats that are LATCH compatible at your authorized Porsche dealer.

▷ Always see the separate installation instructions for your child seat.

▷ Please see the chapter "CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS" on Page 50.



Installing a LATCH child seat system

1. Secure the child seat to retaining lugs **A** as outlined in the instruction manual for the child seat.
2. Pull the child seat to check that both fastening points are engaged correctly.

Note

▷ Make sure that the key switch is switched to AUTO once the child seat has been removed, in order to provide protection to the adult occupants.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sports Exhaust System

Switching on and off

The sports exhaust system can be switched on and off when the ignition is switched on using button **A**.
When the sports exhaust system is switched on, the light-emitting diode in the button lights up.

Parking Brake

Parking brake force is mechanically transferred to the rear wheels by means of cables.

▷ Use the parking brake only after the vehicle has come to a full stop.

Setting the parking brake

▷ Pull the lever **all the way up** (**arrow**).
With the ignition on, the parking brake warning lights in the instrument panel and on-board computer will come on if the lever is even slightly raised. A firm pull upward is required to properly engage the parking brake.
If the brake is not fully set, the vehicle may roll without control.

▷ Move the selector lever to "P" (PDK) or move the gearshift lever to reverse or first gear (Manual transmission).

▷ Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the parking brake is fully set and the vehicle is not moving at all.

⚠ Danger!

Risk of serious personal injury or death. A partially engaged parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll, causing serious personal injury or death to any person in its path.

▷ Engage the parking brake fully.

Releasing the parking brake

▷ Pull the lever slightly up as you depress the release button, and then push the lever all the way down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BRAKE Parking brake warning light USA

Parking brake warning light Canada

The warning lights in the instrument panel and on-board computer will go out after the parking brake is fully released.
The warning lights are not an indicator that the parking brake is fully set; it is only intended to be a warning to release the parking brake before driving the car.

Caution!

A partially engaged brake will overheat the rear brakes, reduce their effectiveness and cause excessive wear.

- Release the parking brake fully.

- When parking your car, always set the parking brake by pulling all the way up on the lever.
- Move the selector lever to “P” (PDK) or move the gearshift lever to reverse or first gear (Manual transmission).
- On hills also turn the front wheels towards the curb.

Brakes

- Make it a habit to check the operation of your brakes before driving.

Keep in mind that the braking distance increases very rapidly as the speed increases. At 60 mph or 100 km/h, for example, it is not twice but four times longer than 30 mph or 50 km/h. Tire traction is also less effective when the roads are wet or slippery.

- Therefore, always maintain a safe distance from the car in front of you.

Vehicles without Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB)

Even though the brake discs consist of alloyed grey cast iron, they will unavoidably start to corrode if your car is parked for an extended period. The brakes will tend to “rub” as a result.
The nature, extent and effects of corrosion depend on the amount of time the vehicle was parked, whether granular or liquid road salt was spread and whether grease-dissolving agents were used in car washes.
To prevent corrosion of the brake discs, ”brake them dry“ before parking the car.
If the braking comfort is noticeably impaired, we recommend having the brake system checked by experts at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Brake system function

Your Porsche is equipped with a power assisted hydraulic dual circuit brake system with disc brakes at the front and rear.
Both circuits function independently. One brake circuit operates the front and the other operates the rear.

If one brake circuit has failed, the other will still operate. However, you will notice an increased pedal travel when you apply the brakes.
Failure of one brake circuit will cause the stopping distance to increase.

Warning!

Risk of an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
In the unlikely event of hydraulic failure of one brake circuit:

- Push the brake pedal down firmly and hold it in that position.
  A mechanical linkage activates the second circuit, and you will be able to bring the vehicle to a stop.
- After bringing your vehicle to a complete stop, avoid driving the vehicle and instead have it towed to the nearest authorized Porsche dealer for repair.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake system warning light

You can check the functionality of the brake system warning light by switching the ignition to the "On" position and verifying that the warning light illuminates.

BRAKE **Brake warning light USA**

Brake warning light Canada

If the warning lights in the instrument panel and on-board computer go on while driving, the brake fluid level may be too low, or (if the brake pedal travel has increased) one of the two brake circuits may have failed.

A greater braking pressure will be required, stopping distances will be longer and the braking behavior will change, particularly in curves.

With correctly adjusted brakes, and a correctly working brake system, the pedal travel to the point of brake actuation should be 1-3/16 in. to 1-9/16 in. or 30 to 40 mm.
Whenever the brake pedal travel exceeds this distance, have the brake system checked.

Brake pedal

Warning!

Risk of an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
Any obstruction of the brake pedal could increase the stopping distance.

- ▷ Always check the movement of the brake pedal before driving and make sure that it is not obstructed by a floor mat or any other object.
- ▷ Secure the floor mat to prevent it from sliding into positions that could interfere with the safe operation of your vehicle.
  Your Porsche dealer will be glad to offer you nonskid floor mats of the correct size.

Note

In case one of the two brake circuits fails, increased pedal travel is required to bring your vehicle to a full stop.

Warning!

To avoid overheating and premature wear of the brakes:

- ▷ Before descending a steep grade, reduce speed and shift the transmission into a lower gear or driving position to control speed.
- ▷ Do not "ride the brakes" by resting your foot on the pedal when not intending to apply brake pressure.
- ▷ Do not hold the pedal down too long or too often.
  This could cause the brakes to get hot and not function properly.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT" on Page 173.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake booster

The brake booster assists braking only when the engine is running.

When the car is moving while the engine is not running, or if the brake booster is defective, more pressure on the brake pedal is required to bring the car to a stop.
If this happens, ABS and PSM will also not operate.

Moisture or road salt on brakes affects braking. Brakes will dry after a few cautious brake applications.

Warning!

Risk of an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
Driving through water may reduce the traction.
Moisture on brakes from road water, car wash, or coating of road salt may affect braking efficiency.

▷ Cautiously apply brakes to test brakes after exposure to road water, etc.

Brake wear

Your car has excellent brakes, but they are still subject to wear. The rate at which they wear depends on how the brakes are used.

▷ Have the brake system inspected at the intervals recommended in your Maintenance Booklet.

Brake system warning light

You can check the functionality of the brake system warning light by switching the ignition to the "On" position and verifying that the warning light illuminates.

BRAKE **Warning light USA**

Warning light Canada

If the warning lights in the instrument panel and on-board computer stay on when the engine is running or come on while driving, the brake pads are worn excessively.

▷ Do not continue to operate the vehicle.
Have your authorized Porsche dealer inspect or replace the brake pads.

Brake pads and brake discs

Wear on the brake pads and brake discs depends to a great extent on the driving style and the conditions of use and therefore cannot be expressed in actual miles on the road.

The high-performance brake system is designed for optimal braking effect at all speeds and temperatures.
Certain speeds, braking forces and ambient conditions (such as temperature and humidity) therefore might cause “brake noises”.

New brake pads or linings

New brake pads and brake discs have to be “broken in”, and therefore only attain optimal friction when the car has covered several hundred miles or km.
The slightly reduced braking ability must be compensated for by pressing the brake pedal harder. This also applies whenever the brake pads and brake discs are replaced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ABS Brake System (Antilock Brake System)

The ABS system represents a major contribution to the enhancement of active safety in your vehicle. This system prevents the wheels from locking in a panic stop on almost all road surfaces.

With the ABS system in your vehicle, the following areas are enhanced:

Steering, vehicle remains steerable under all braking forces when ABS is engaged.

Good directional control, no swerving caused by locking of wheels under braking conditions.

Shorter stopping distance, stopping distances are usually reduced because controlled braking is maximized.

Prevention of wheel lock up, no brake- induced sliding and thus no localized tire wear from emergency braking.

The crucial advantage of the ABS system over a conventional brake system is in the area of maintaining directional control and maneuverability of the car in emergency situations.

Warning!

The increased control that is provided should not induce you to take greater risks with your safety. The limits dictated by the laws of physics cannot be overcome, even with ABS. The risk of accidents due to inappropriate speed cannot be reduced, even by the ABS. The driver bears the responsibility for all driving maneuvers.

- Adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and weather conditions.
- Obey all traffic laws.

Other vehicles not equipped with the ABS system may not be able to maintain control, especially on wet or poor road surfaces and thus may be more likely to impact you from behind.

- To minimize that risk, use your ABS system to increase your ability to maneuver to avoid dangerous situations and not merely to try to stop in the shortest distance possible.

Operation of the ABS system

A wheel speed sensor is mounted to each of the four wheels. If wheel lock-up of either of the front wheels or the rear wheels is sensed during braking, the brake pressure is adjusted automatically until the wheel no longer slips.

If braking forces approach the wheel lock-up point for all wheels (panic braking) the ABS system will intervene to provide a rapid rythmic braking. The proper operation of ABS is perceived by the driver as a pulsating brake pedal in conjunction with audible noise and perhaps some vibration.

- If you experience these sensations while driving or a road surface with questionable traction, reduce vehicle speed appropriate for the prevailing road conditions.
- If full braking should be necessary, press the brake pedal all the way down throughout the entire braking procedure, regardless of the pulsating pedal. Do not ease up on pressure applied to the pedal.

The functional readiness of all the main electrical components of the ABS is checked by an electronic monitoring system both before and while you drive.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ABS Warning light USA

Warning light Canada

When the ignition is switched on the ABS warning light will light up while the system is electronically interrogated and goes out when the engine is started if the check is not yet complete.
If the ABS warning lamp fails to go out, this indicates that ABS has been deactivated due to a fault. If the warning lights in the instrument panel and on-board computer light up while you are driving, this indicates that a fault has occurred. In both cases, normal braking, as in vehicles without ABS, is still retained.

The ABS system should, however, be examined at an authorized Porsche dealer immediately to prevent the occurrence of further faults.

▷ If the ABS system becomes inoperative, take your vehicle to your authorized Porsche dealer immediately.

Warning!

Risk of an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
The control unit of the ABS brake system is set for standard tire size. If non-standard tires are installed, the control unit may misinterpret the speed of the vehicle, because of the variant data it receives from the sensors on the axles.

▷ Use only tire makes and types tested by Porsche.

Clutch Pedal

The clutch pedal must be depressed fully before the starter will engage.

Warning!

Risk of an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Always check the movement of the clutch pedal before driving and make sure that it is not obstructed by a floor mat or any other object.

▷ Secure the floor mat to prevent it from sliding into positions that could interfere with the safe operation of your vehicle.
Your Porsche dealer will be glad to offer you nonskid floor mats of the correct size.

To avoid damage to the clutch and transmission:

▷ Always depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gears.

▷ Do not hold the car on a steep grade with the clutch pedal partially depressed.

Should the free travel of the clutch pedal suddenly become larger, it could mean a malfunction of the clutch.

▷ See your Porsche dealer for correction.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sport Mode

A sportier car set-up is obtained when Sport mode is switched on. Interventions by the Porsche control systems are intentionally shifted towards greater agility and driving performance:

- PASM (Porsche Active Suspension Management) is automatically changed to Sport mode, resulting in a stiffer suspension setup.
- When Sport mode is active, the PDK transmission switches to a sporty gear-changing map and shortens the gear shifting times. Gear changes take place faster, but fuel consumption is also increased.
  PSM (Porsche Stability Management) control gives a sportier road-feel to the vehicle. PSM interventions take place later than in Normal mode. The driver can maneuver the vehicle with greater agility at its performance limits, without having to dispense with the assistance of PSM in emergency situations. This helps to achieve optimal lap times, particularly on race circuits with a dry road surface.
- The electronic accelerator pedal reacts sooner, and the engine is more responsive to throttle inputs. When Sport mode is switched on, this function is activated only after the driver has floored the accelerator pedal or released it briefly.
- The rpm limiter characteristic is “harder”, i.e. the engine is immediately throttled when the performance limits are reached (only in manual selection mode for vehicles with PDK transmission).

▷ Please observe the chapters on PSM, PASM and PDK.

Switching Sport mode on and off

Switching Sport mode on and off simultaneously activates and deactivates the Sport mode in PASM.
If PASM Sport mode was activated with the PASM button, PASM remains active.

After the ignition is switched off, Sport mode is automatically reset to Normal mode.

SPORT button

▷ Press SPORT button **A** in the center console. When Sport mode is switched on, the light-emitting diode in the SPORT button is lit.

A sporty gear-changing map is enabled and the gear shifting times are shortened for the PDK transmission.
A sporty driving style is recognized more quickly and the gear-changing speeds are adapted to driving performance.

Deceleration downshifts are commenced earlier. Downshifts are made during slight decelerations, even at higher engine speeds.

▷ Please see the chapter “SPORT MODE (“SPORT” AND “SPORT PLUS” MODES)” on Page 176.

SPORT PLUS button
(only on vehicles with PDK transmission)

In “Sport Plus” mode, the PDK transmission changes to a shift program designed for driving on race circuits. 7th gear is not selected.
The gear-changing performance is enhanced significantly again compared with “Sport” mode.

▷ Please see the chapter “SPORT MODE (“SPORT” AND “SPORT PLUS” MODES)” on Page 176.

▷ Press SPORT PLUS button **B** in the center console.
When Sport mode is switched on, the light-emitting diode in the SPORT PLUS button is lit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When mode “Sport” is switched on, the logo SPORT appears next to the digital speedometer.

When mode “Sport Plus” is switched on, the logo SPORT PLUS appears next to the digital speedometer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Porsche Stability Management (PSM)

PSM is an active control system for stabilization of the vehicle approaching the performance limits of driving maneuvers.

Warning!

Risk of an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
The increased control that is provided should not induce you to take greater risks with your safety. The limits dictated by the laws of physics cannot be overcome, even with PSM. The risk of accidents due to inappropriate speed cannot be reduced, even by PSM. The driver bears the responsibility for all driving maneuvers.

▷ Adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and weather conditions.

▷ Obey all traffic laws.

Sensors at the wheels, brakes, steering system and engine continuously measure:

– Speed

– Direction of travel (steering angle)

– Lateral acceleration

– Rate of turn about the vertical axis

– Longitudinal acceleration

PSM uses these values to determine the direction of travel indicated by the driver.
PSM intervenes and helps to correct the course if the actual direction of motion deviates from the chosen course (steering-wheel position):
It brakes individual wheels as needed. In addition, the engine power may be manipulated in order to stabilize the vehicle.

The events below inform the driver of PSM control operations and warn him/her to adapt his/her driving style to the road conditions:

– The multifunctional information light on the instrument panel flashes.

– Hydraulic noises can be heard.

– The vehicle decelerates and steering-wheel forces are altered as the PSM controls the brakes.

– Reduced engine power.

– The brake pedal pulsates and its position is changed during braking.
In order to achieve full vehicle deceleration, foot pressure must be increased after the brake pedal has begun vibrating.

Examples of PSM control operations

– If the front wheels of the vehicle drift on a bend, the rear wheel on the inside of the bend is braked and the engine power is reduced if necessary.

– If the rear of the vehicle swings out on a bend, the front wheel on the outside of the bend is braked.

Additional braking functions

– Pre-filling the brake system:
The brake system is prepared for possible subsequent emergency braking if the accelerator pedal is released suddenly and quickly. The brake system is prefilled and the brake pads are already applied gently to the brake discs.

– Brake booster:
In the event of an emergency braking operation where the pedal force is insufficient, a brake booster provides the braking pressure necessary for maximum deceleration at all 4 wheels.

Advantages of PSM

– Best possible traction and lane-holding ability in all driving situations – even on road surfaces with varying friction.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The system compensates for undesired lateral vehicle reactions when the driver releases the accelerator pedal or brakes when cornering. This compensation functions up to the maximum lateral acceleration.
– PSM actively stabilizes the vehicle as required during dynamic driving maneuvers (e.g. rapid steering movements, during lane changes or on alternating bends).
– Improved braking stability on bends and on different or varying road surfaces.
– It improves braking function and shortens stopping distance in the event of emergency braking.

Readiness for operation

PSM is switched on automatically every time you start the engine.

PSM should always be switched on during "normal" driving.

However, it may be advantageous to switch off PSM temporarily in exceptional situations, for example:

– On a loose surface or in deep snow,
– When "rocking" the vehicle free and
– When using snow chains.

Switching off PSM

▷ Press PSM OFF button.
PSM is switched off after a short delay.
The light-emitting diode in the button is lit up.
When the PSM is switched off, the PSM multi-functional light on the instrument panel is lit **and** a message is shown on the on-board computer.
An acoustic signal also sounds.

Note

When PSM is switched off, the additional braking functions are deactivated. Automatic reactivation in emergency situations is linked to the PSM control.

The following functions stabilize the vehicle in emergency situations, even with PSM switched off:

– When PSM is off, the vehicle is stabilized as soon as one of the two front wheels enters the ABS control range.
– When PSM is off and Sport mode is on, the vehicle is stabilized as soon as both front wheels enter the ABS control range.

One-sided spinning of the wheels is prevented, even with PSM switched off.

Switching PSM back on

▷ Press PSM OFF button.
PSM is switched on after a short delay.
The light-emitting diode in the button and the PSM multifunctional light on the instrument panel go out.
The on-board computer shows a message.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sport mode

A sportier car set-up is obtained when Sport or Sport Plus mode is switched on.
PSM interventions are later than in Normal mode; the vehicle can be maneuverd with greater agility at its performance limits, without dispensing with the assistance of PSM in emergency situations. This helps to achieve optimal lap times, particularly on race circuits and a dry road surface.

PSM multifunctional light

- The multifunctional light on the instrument panel lights up for a lamp check when the ignition is switched on.
- The light indicates a control operation by flashing, including when PSM is switched off (brake control in the event of one-sided wheel spin).
- In conjunction with a message on the on-board computer, the light indicates that PSM is switched off.
  An acoustic signal also sounds.
- The light indicates a fault in conjunction with a message on the on-board computer.
  PSM is out of order.

▷ Please have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.

▷ Please see the chapter "PUTTING VEHICLE INTO OPERATION" on Page 251.

Towing

▷ Please see the chapter "TOWING" on Page 269.

Checks on test stands

Brake tests

Brake tests must be performed only on plate-type test stands or roller test stands.

The ignition must be switched off.

The following limit values must not be exceeded on roller test stands:

- Testing speed 5 mph (8 km/h)
- Test duration 20 seconds

Handbrake tests

Handbrake tests on the roller test stand must be performed **only with the ignition switched off**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)

PASM makes two running-gear setups available to the driver: “Normal” and “Sport”.
The selection is made via a button on the center console.

In Normal mode the running gear is in a comfortable setup.
Sport mode offers very sporty shock absorber tuning.

The variable suspension system selects the appropriate damping level for each wheel according to the situation and driving conditions.

Example:
If the vehicle is driven in a very sporty manner in Normal mode, PASM automatically adapts the shock-absorber behavior to the driving situation accordingly.

Switching on PASM Sport mode

▷ Press PASM button in the center console.
When PASM Sport mode is switched on, the light-emitting diode in the button is lit up **and** a message is shown on the on-board computer.

Switching off PASM Sport mode

▷ Press PASM button in the center console.
The light-emitting diode in the button goes out **and** the on-board computer displays a message.

After the ignition is switched off, PASM is automatically reset to Normal mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Retractable Spoiler

The rear spoiler improves driving stability, especially at higher speeds.

Warning!

Risk of accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
If the spoiler cannot be extended, driving stability will be adversely affected by increased rear axle lift, which could lead to loss of control.

- ▷ Adapt your driving style and speed to the changed driving conditions.
- ▷ Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Risk of injury during manual retraction or extension of the spoiler with the vehicle stationary.

- ▷ Make sure that no persons or objects are within the range of movement of the rear spoiler.

Risk of damage from pushing the vehicle by the rear spoiler.

- ▷ Do not push the vehicle at the rear spoiler.

Automatic control (automatic mode)

The rear spoiler extends at approx. 75 mph (120 km/h) and retracts again at approx. 50 mph (80 km/h).

If the automatic control fails, the warning light lights up.

Warning light

The warning light in the on-board computer lights up when the rear spoiler does not extend over 75 mph (120 km/h) or its end position is not reached.

Manual control (manual mode)

When the ignition is on, the rear spoiler can be extended and retracted manually using the button in the center console.

Note

When the rear spoiler is extended manually, the automatic control does not operate and the rear spoiler must be manually retracted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Extending

▷ Press button briefly.
The spoiler extends to its final position.
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.
The rear spoiler remains extended even after switching off ignition.

Retracting

▷ **at speeds between 0 and 20 mph (0 and 30 km/h):**
Press and hold button until the rear spoiler has reached its final position.
The light-emitting diode in the button goes out.
The rear spoiler changes to automatic mode.

▷ **at speeds between 20 and 60 mph (30 and 100 km/h):**
Press button briefly.
The rear spoiler retracts, the light-emitting diode in the button goes out.
The rear spoiler changes to automatic mode.

▷ **at speeds over 60 mph (100 km/h):**
Press button briefly.
The rear spoiler remains extended, the light-emitting diode in the button goes out.
The rear spoiler changes to automatic mode.

Manually retracting an extended rear spoiler after switching on the ignition again

1. Press button briefly.
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.
The rear spoiler is now in manual mode.
2. Press and hold button until the rear spoiler has reached its final position.
The light-emitting diode in the button goes out.
The rear spoiler changes to automatic mode.

Fixed rear spoiler

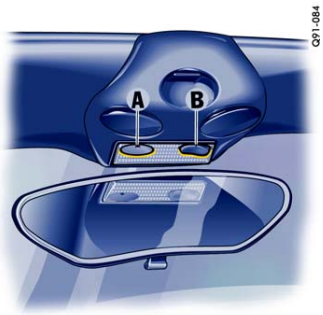
⚠ **Caution!**

Risk of damage to rear spoiler.

▷ Please consult the operator before using automatic car washes.

▷ Do not push the vehicle by the spoiler.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A *- Orientation light*
B *- Interior light switch, footwell light*

Interior lights

▷ Please see the chapter "LOAD SWITCH-OFF AFTER 2 HOURS OR 7 DAYS" on Page 246.

Interior light, footwell lights

Switching off

▷ Press left half of switch.

Switching to continuous illumination

▷ Press right half of switch.

Switching on and off automatically

▷ Move switch to center position.

The lights are **switched on** when a door is unlocked or opened or when the ignition key is withdrawn from the ignition lock.

The lights are **switched off** with a delay of approx. 30 seconds after the door is closed.

The lights go out immediately as soon as the ignition key is inserted in the ignition lock or the vehicle is locked.

Orientation light

The light-emitting diode in the interior light improves your orientation inside the vehicle when it is dark.

Note on operation

On vehicles with Sport Chrono Package Plus, the brightness of the orientation light can be changed in PCM.

▷ Please see the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking Aids

Parking assistant

When the driver backs up, the parking assistant system indicates the distance between the car and a large obstacle behind it, by means of signal tones.

Warning!

Risk of serious personal injury or death. Parking assistant cannot detect small objects such as children and pets.
Despite use of the parking assistant system, the driver is still responsible for taking due care and assessing obstacles when backing up.

▷ Make sure that no persons, especially small children, animals or obstacles are within the maneuvering area.

The parking assistant system is activated automatically when reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on.

Note

Be aware that the parking assistant system is **not** switched on if the car rolls backward without reverse gear being engaged.

Q93-032

Ultrasound sensors

Sensors

Four ultrasound sensors in the rear bumper measure the distance to the closest obstacle.

– Range middle sensors around 60 in./150 cm

– Range outer sensors around 24 in./60 cm

Obstacles cannot be detected in the "blind" sensor area (e.g. near the ground).

Note

The sensors must always be kept free of dirt, ice and snow in order to ensure that they are fully functional.

Caution!

To avoid damaging the sensors:

▷ Maintain sufficient distance when cleaning with steam-jet units.

Signal tones/function

When reverse gear is selected, the parking assistant confirms that it is switched on by issuing a **short signal tone**.
A detected obstacle is signalled by an **intermittent tone**. The intervals decrease as the obstacle is approached.
A **continuous tone** sounds when the distance becomes less than one foot. This continuous tone can stop if the obstacle is approached closer than one foot.
The radio volume should not be so loud as to drown out the signal tones.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The parking assistant system cannot detect:

- sound-absorbing obstacles (e.g. powder snow),
- sound-reflecting obstacles (e.g. glass surfaces, flat painted surfaces)
- and very thin obstacles.
- Other ultrasound sources (e.g. pneumatic brakes of other vehicles, jackhammers) can interfere with detection of obstacles.

Fault indication

The parking assistant system indicates a fault in two ways:

- After reverse gear has been selected, the short signal tone is followed by a continuous tone of the **same** pitch:
  This indicates that sensors are soiled or covered with ice.
- After reverse gear has been selected, the short signal tone is followed by a continuous tone with a much **lower** pitch:
  This indicates a general system fault.
  Please have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.

A - *Control switch for door mirror adjustment*

Swivelling down mirror glass as a parking aid

▷ Please see the chapter “SEAT MEMORY” on Page 35.

- When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the passenger’s side swivels down slightly to show the curb area.

Preconditions

- Vehicle must be equipped with seat memory.
- Set the control switch **A** to “passenger’s side”.
- Reverse gear must be engaged.

Returning mirror glass to its original position

▷ Drive forwards with a speed of over 4 mph (6 km/h) **or**

▷ Set the control switch **A** to “driver’s side”.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

0 - *Initial position*
1 - *Ignition on*
2 - *Start engine*
3 - *Ignition off*

Ignition/Starter Switch with anti-theft Steering Lock

The ignition lock has a total of four ignition lock positions.
The ignition key rebounds to the initial position from every ignition lock position.

▷ **For your safety, fasten safety belts.**

▷ Please see the chapter "IMMOBILIZER" on Page 15.

▷ Please see the chapter "KEY WITH RADIO REMOTE CONTROL" on Page 16.

Before starting the engine

▷ Apply the footbrake.

▷ **Manual transmission:**
Fully depress the clutch pedal and put the gearshift lever into neutral.
The clutch pedal must be depressed fully before the starter will engage.

▷ **In vehicles with PDK transmission:**
Move PDK selector lever to position **P** or **N**.

▷ Do not press the accelerator pedal.

Switch position 0

Initial position

The ignition key cannot be withdrawn when the ignition is switched on or when the engine has been started.

To withdraw the ignition key:

▷ Stop the vehicle.

▷ **In vehicles with PDK transmission:**
Move PDK selector lever to position **P**.

▷ Switch ignition off.

▷ Remove ignition key.

Switch position 1

Ignition on

▷ Turn ignition key to position **1**.
Ignition is switched on.

Note on operation

All electrical equipment can be switched on.

▷ Please see the chapter "WARNINGS ON THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND THE ON-BOARD COMPUTER" on Page 162.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switch position 2

Start engine

- ▷ Turn ignition key to ignition lock position **2**.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "STARTING PROCEDURES" on Page 75.

Switch position 3

Ignition off

- ▷ Turn ignition key to ignition lock position **3**.

Note on operation

The vehicle battery discharges if the ignition key is left inserted.

If the vehicle battery is dead, the key can only be pulled out of the ignition lock if the emergency operation is performed:

- ▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY OPERATION – PULLING OUT THE IGNITION KEY" on Page 74.

Locking the steering column

Automatic locking

The steering column is automatically locked when the ignition key is withdrawn from the ignition lock.

⚠ Warning!

Risk of an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
The steering wheel will lock and will cause loss of steering.

- ▷ Never remove key from the ignition lock or turn the key off while the vehicle is moving.
- ▷ **Always withdraw the ignition key** when leaving the vehicle.

Automatic unlocking

The steering column is unlocked when the vehicle is unlocked with the radio remote control.

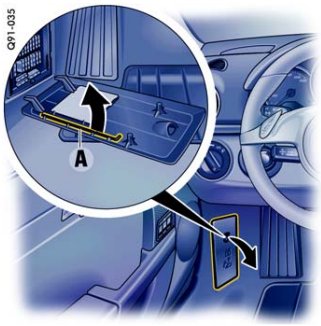
Note

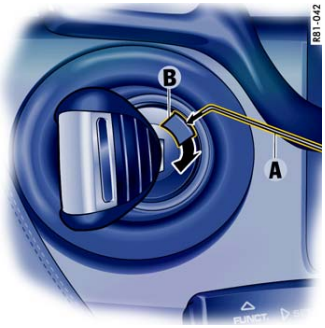
- ▷ To avoid discharging the battery, always remove the ignition key from the ignition lock. Please see the chapter "BATTERY" on Page 249.

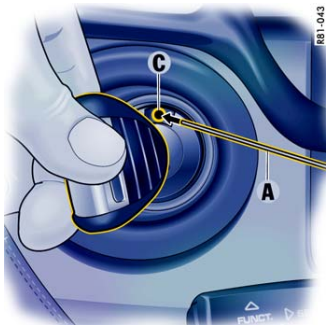
Gong

If you leave the key in the ignition/steering lock, a gong will sound when the driver's door is opened. This is a reminder to remove the key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine







Emergency operation – pulling out the ignition key

If the vehicle battery is dead, the key can be pulled out only if the emergency operation is performed.

1. Grasp the fuse box cover at the finger hole and pull it off.
2. Unclip metal hook **A** on the inside of the cover.
3. Use metal hook **A** to remove the plastic lid **B** from the ignition lock. Make sure that plastic lid **B** is not lost.
4. Turn ignition key counter-clockwise as far as it will go.
5. Press metal hook **A** into opening **C**. An unlocking sound will be heard.
6. Turn the ignition key to initial position (0) and remove.
7. Re-fit the plastic lid **B**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting Procedures

▷ Please see the chapter "IMMOBILIZER" on Page 15.

▷ Please see the chapter "EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM" on Page 208.

Warning!

Serious injury or death may result if you are involved in a collision without having fastened the safety belts.

▷ Fasten safety belts before driving away.

Before starting the engine

▷ Apply the footbrake.

▷ **Manual transmission:**
Fully depress the clutch pedal and put the gearshift lever into neutral.
The clutch pedal must be depressed fully before the starter will engage.

▷ **In vehicles with PDK transmission:**
Move PDK selector lever to position **P** or **N**.

Temperature sensors on the engine automatically provide the correct fuel/air mixture required for starting.
Therefore, it is **not necessary to depress the accelerator pedal** while starting a cold or a warm engine.

Starting the engine

▷ Turn ignition key to ignition lock position **2**.

▷ As soon as the engine starts, release the ignition key.

The first operation of the starter is ended automatically when the engine starts.
If the engine does not start, subsequent starter operations will not be ended automatically.

If the engine fails to start after 10 or 15 seconds of cranking:

▷ Wait about 10 seconds before engaging the starter again.

▷ When starting the engine, be ready to drive immediately.
Drive vehicle at moderate speeds and avoid engine speeds above 4,200 rpm during the first 5 minutes.

▷ Do not let the engine idle to warm up.

Danger!

Engine exhaust fumes have many components which you can smell. They also contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is a colorless and odorless gas.
Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and even death if inhaled.

▷ Never start or let the engine run in an enclosed, unventilated area.
It is not recommended to sit in your car for prolonged periods with the engine on and the car not moving.

An unattended vehicle with a running engine is potentially hazardous.
If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unnoticed.

▷ Never leave the engine idling unattended.

Danger of fire.

▷ Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other flammable material.

▷ If your car catches on fire for any reason, call the fire department.
Do not endanger your life by attempting to put out the fire.

Risk of burn injury when standing near or coming into contact with the exhaust pipe.

The exhaust pipe is hot when the vehicle is running and remains hot for some time after the vehicle is turned off.

▷ To prevent injury, make a point of noting where your vehicle's exhaust pipe is, avoid placing your legs near the exhaust pipe, and closely supervise children around the vehicle when the exhaust pipe could be hot.
A hot exhaust pipe can cause serious burns.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Stopping Engine

- ▷ Turn key back to position **3**.
- ▷ Do not stop engine immediately after hard or extended driving.
  Keep engine running at increased idle for about two minutes to prevent excessive heat build-up before turning off engine.
- ▷ To avoid discharging the battery, always remove the ignition key from the ignition lock.
- ▷ When leaving the car, always remove the ignition key, apply the parking brake and engage 1st gear or reverse gear on vehicles with manual transmission or move the selector lever to position P on vehicles with PDK transmission.
- ▷ Engage the steering lock by moving the steering wheel to the left or right.
  Turn the steering wheel to the locking position before you switch off the engine so that you don't have to exert yourself when locking or unlocking the steering.

⚠ Warning!

Danger of injury. Hot engine compartment components can burn skin on contact.

- ▷ Before working on any part in the engine compartment, turn the engine off and let it cool down sufficiently.

Risk of burn injury when standing near or coming into contact with the exhaust pipe.

The exhaust pipe is hot when the vehicle is running and remains hot for some time after the vehicle is turned off.

- ▷ To prevent injury, make a point of noting where your vehicle's exhaust pipe is, avoid placing your legs near the exhaust pipe, and closely supervise children around the vehicle when the exhaust pipe could be hot.
  A hot exhaust pipe can cause serious burns.

Engine-compartment blower, radiator fan

The radiator and radiator fans are in the front of the car.
The engine-compartment blower is mounted in the engine compartment.

⚠ Warning!

Risk of injury.
After the engine is switched off, the engine-compartment temperature is monitored for approx. 30 minutes.
During this period, and depending on temperature, the engine-compartment blower may continue to run or start to run.

- ▷ Carry out work in these areas only with the engine off, the ignition off, and exercise extreme caution.

Risk of injury. The radiator fans in the front end of the car may be operating or unexpectedly start operating when the engine is switched on.

- ▷ Carry out work in these areas only with the engine switched off.

Automatic garage door

The ignition system in your Porsche may interfere with your electronically operated garage door.

- ▷ To check this, drive your Porsche close to the garage door. Make sure not to interfere with the operating range of the door.
- ▷ Run the engine at different speeds.
- ▷ If the garage door opens or closes without you operating the garage door unit in your car, contact the dealer who installed the automatic garage door to have the frequency and/or coding of the garage door signal changed or modified.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency Flasher Switch

Operational readiness of the emergency flasher does not depend on the ignition lock and turn signal lever position.

- If your car is disabled or parked under emergency conditions switch on the emergency flasher in the dashboard.
  All turn signals and the indicator light in the switch flash with the same frequency.

Warning!

Risk of an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- Whenever stalled or stopped for emergency repairs, move the car well off the road. Switch on the emergency flasher and mark the car with road flares or other warning devices.
- Do not remain in the car. Someone approaching from the rear may not realize your vehicle is stopped and cause a collision.

Danger of fire.

- Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other flammable material.

Hot engine compartment components can burn skin on contact.

- Before working on any part in the engine compartment, turn the engine off and let it cool down sufficiently.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Light Switch on Vehicles with Bi-Xenon Headlights

● **Lights switched off**

Daytime driving lights are switched on when the engine is running.

HOME **Welcome Home Function**

Daytime driving lights are switched on when the engine is running.

Parking lights, side marker lights, license plate light, instrument illumination, daytime driving lights switched off
Canada: daytime driving lights switched on

Low beam, high beam

Only with ignition on,
daytime driving lights switched off

Rear fog light

Pull switch to second click.
Indicator light on.

Warning chime

If the ignition key is withdrawn and the door is opened while the lights (not the Welcome Home lighting) are on, a **chime** warns of possible battery discharge.

In some countries, differences are possible due to provisions of law.

Daytime driving lights

The daytime driving lights are integrated in the front auxiliary headlights. These lights are switched on only when the engine is running and with the light switch in the positions OFF or HOME. Low beam headlights must be switched on when driving through tunnels or at dusk, for example.

Operation of the daytime driving lights may vary depending on country-specific regulations.

Canada only:
In addition to the auxiliary headlights the parking lights are switched on.

USA only:
The daytime driving lights can be deactivated in the on-board computer.

▷ Please see the chapter "ON-BOARD COMPUTER (BC)" on Page 130.

Vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus

Further individual light functions are available in vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus.

▷ Please observe the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

Cornering light

The dynamic cornering light is activated above speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Headlight Beam Adjustment

Vehicles with **Bi-Xenon headlights** feature **dynamic** headlight beam adjustment.

When the ignition is switched on, the level of the headlight beam automatically changes in accordance with the vehicle load.
The level of the headlight beam is automatically kept constant during acceleration and braking.

Checking operation

1. Switch the low beam on.
2. Insert ignition key and switch ignition on.
   The light beam first dips all the way down and is then adapted to the vehicle load.

If this test item is not met, the headlight beam adjustment system must be checked by an authorized Porsche dealer.

Welcome Home Lighting

Switching on

▷ Move light switch to the HOME position.

For improved visibility and security when you get in and out of the car, the daytime driving lights and the tail lights remain on for a certain period of time:

– **When you get out of the car**, the lights are turned on for approx. 30 seconds after the door is opened. The off-delay time resumes when the vehicle is locked.
  On vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus, the PCM can be used to set the off-delay time. This setting also changes the lighting period for unlocking the vehicle.
  Please observe the chapter “Individual Memory” in the separate PCM operating instructions.
– The lights are turned on for approx. 30 seconds **when the vehicle is unlocked**.
  The lights go out if the ignition is switched on or when leaving the Welcome Home lighting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Light Switch on Vehicles with Halogen Headlights

- **Lights switched off**

HOME **Welcome Home Function**

Parking lights, side marker lights, license plate light, instrument illumination

Low beam, high beam

Only with ignition on

Fog light in addition to parking lights or low beam

Pull switch to first click.
Indicator light on.

Rear fog light in addition to fog lights

Pull switch to second click.
Indicator light on.

Warning chime

If the ignition key is withdrawn and the door is opened while the lights (not the Welcome Home lighting) are on, a **chime** warns of possible battery discharge.

In some countries, differences are possible due to provisions of law.

Vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus

Further individual light functions are available in vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus.

▷ Please observe the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

Daytime driving lights

USA only:
The daytime driving lights can be activated/deactivated in the on-board computer.

▷ Please see the chapter "ON-BOARD COMPUTER (BC)" on Page 130.

Welcome Home Lighting

Switching on

▷ Move light switch to the HOME position.

For improved visibility and security when you get in and out of the car, the fog lights and the tail lights remain on for a certain period of time:

– **When you get out of the car**, the lights are turned on for approx. 30 seconds after the door is opened. The off-delay time resumes when the vehicle is locked.
On vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus, the PCM can be used to set the off-delay time. This setting also changes the lighting period for unlocking the vehicle.
Please observe the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

– The lights are turned on for approx. 30 seconds **when the vehicle is unlocked**. The lights go out if the ignition is switched on or when leaving the Welcome Home lighting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn Signal / Headlight Dimmer / Parking light / Flasher Lever

Turn signals, low beam and high beam are ready for operation when the ignition is on.

1 – Turn signal left
2 – Turn signal right
Push the lever to the upper or lower pressure point – turn signals flash three times

3 – High beam
4 – Headlight flasher
Lever in center position – Low beam

When high beam and headlight flasher are selected, the blue indicator light in the tachometer is lit.

The turn signal lever turns off automatically when the steering wheel is straightened out after completing a turn.

Lane changer

▷ To indicate your intention when changing lanes on the freeway, slightly lift or depress the lever to the resistance point.
The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

▷ If the frequency of the display becomes noticeably faster, check the operation of the turn signal bulbs.

Headlight flasher

(With ignition on or off)

▷ To flash the headlights to oncomming motorists, slightly pull the lever toward the steering wheel and then release it.
The blue indicator light in the tachometer will go on/off as you pull/release the lever.

Parking light

The parking light can only be switched on when the ignition is switched off.

▷ Move the lever up or down to switch on the right or left parking light.

Individual Light Functions

Further individual light functions are available in vehicles with Sport Chrono Plus package.

▷ Please refer to the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Wiper/ Washer Lever

Warning!

Danger of injury when the windshield wipers operate unintentionally, e.g. in intermittent or rain sensor operation.
Risk of damage to the windshield, wiper system and headlight washer.

- ▷ Avoid running the wiper blades over a dry windshield to prevent scratching the glass. Spray washer fluid on the windshield first. A scratched windshield will reduce visibility.
- ▷ Always loosen wiper blades from frozen glass before operating wipers to prevent damage to the wiper motor or blades.
- ▷ Always switch off windshield wipers in car wash to prevent them wiping unintentionally (intermittent or sensor operation).
- ▷ Always switch off windshield wipers before cleaning the windshield to avoid unintentional operation (intermittent or sensor operation).
- ▷ Do not operate the headlight washer in car washes.
- ▷ Do not operate headlight washer when it is frozen.

Wiper and headlight washer system

0 – Windshield wipers off

1 – Intermittent/rain sensor operation for front windshield wipers

- ▷ Move wiper lever upwards to the first click. Please see the chapter "RAIN SENSOR" on Page 83.

2 – Windshield wipers slow

- ▷ Move wiper lever upwards to the second click.

3 – Windshield wipers fast

- ▷ Move wiper lever upwards to the third click.

4 – Windshield wiper – one-touch operation:

- ▷ Move wiper lever downwards. The windshield wipers wipe once.

5 – Windshield wipers and washer system:

- ▷ Pull wiper lever towards the steering wheel. The washer system sprays and wipes while the lever is pulled towards the steering wheel. When the wiper lever is released, a few drying wipes are executed.

A - Headlight washer (Vehicles with Bi-Xenon headlights):

The washer sprays only while low beam or high beam is switched on.

- ▷ Briefly push button **A** to operate headlight washer system.
- ▷ If heavily soiled, repeat wash.

The headlight washer system automatically sprays once for every ten times the front windshield washer system is operated.

Note

The **windshield washer nozzles** are heated when the ignition is on, as a precaution against freezing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wipe interval control

On vehicles without a rain sensor, the wiping intervals can be adjusted in four steps.

Decreasing intervals

▷ Adjust switch **A** upwards.
The setting is confirmed by one wipe of the windshield.

Increasing intervals

▷ Adjust switch **A** downwards.

Rain sensor

In vehicles with a rain sensor the amount of rainfall (snowfall too) which has settled on the windshield is measured. Wiper speed is automatically adjusted accordingly.

Switching on

▷ Move wiper lever upwards to the first click.

Switching off

▷ Move wiper lever to position **0**.

The rain sensor remains switched off if the wiper lever is already in position **1** when the ignition is switched on.

To switch the rain sensor on again:

▷ Move wiper lever to position **0** and then to position **1 or**

▷ Operate windshield washer system **5 or**

▷ Change the sensitivity of the rain sensor with four-stage switch **A**.

Switch-on is confirmed by one wipe of the windshield.

On vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus, further rain sensor functions can be selected via the PCM.

▷ Please see the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

Changing the sensitivity of the rain sensor

Sensitivity can be set with switch **A** in 4 stages:

▷ Adjust switch **A** upwards –
high sensitivity.
The setting is confirmed by one wipe of the windshield.

▷ Adjust switch **A** downwards –
low sensitivity.

Maintenance note

▷ Periodically clean the wiper blades with a window cleaner, especially after the vehicle has been washed in a car wash. We recommend Porsche window cleaner. If they are very dirty (e.g. with insect remains), they can be cleaned with a sponge or cloth.

If the wiper blades rub or squeak, this may be as a result of the following:

If the vehicle is washed in an automatic car wash, wax residues may be adhering to the windshield. These wax residues can only be removed by using a window cleaner concentrate.

▷ Please see the chapter "WASHER FLUID" on Page 210.

▷ Please contact your authorized Porsche dealer for further information.

The wiper blades may be damaged or worn.

▷ Replace wiper blades as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A - *Automatic speed control readiness off/on*
1 - ***+**SPEED/SET (accelerate/store)*
2 - ***–**SPEED (decelerate)*
3 - *OFF (interrupt)*
4 - *RESUME*

Automatic Speed Control

The automatic speed control maintains any selected speed between 15 mph and 145 mph (30 km/h and 240 km/h) without you having to use the accelerator pedal.
The automatic speed control is operated with the lever on the steering wheel.

Vehicles with PDK

Downshifts are carried out to help maintain the pre-selected speed (especially when driving downhill).

Warning!

Risk of an accident resulting in serious personal injury or death. A constant speed may not be safe in heavy traffic, or on winding or slippery roads.
With the speed control system engaged, the engine speed will not return to idle when removing the foot from the accelerator pedal.

- ▷ Do not use the speed control when it may be unsafe to keep the car at a constant speed.
- ▷ Observe all local and national speed limits.

Switch automatic speed control readiness on

- ▷ Press button **A** on the automatic speed control lever.

This green indicator light in the speedometer now indicates readiness

Hold and store speed

- ▷ Bring the car to the desired speed with the accelerator.
- ▷ Then briefly push the operating lever forward (position **1**).

Accelerating (e.g. to overtake)

Option 1

- ▷ Increase the speed as usual with the accelerator.
  When you ease off the accelerator, the previously saved value is set again.

Option 2

- ▷ Push operating lever forward (position **1**) until the desired speed is reached.
  The speed reached is maintained and stored when the lever is released.

Option 3

- ▷ Push lever slightly forwards (position **1**) (a maximum of 10 times).
  The speed is increased by 1 mph (1.6 km/h), each time the lever is pushed forwards.

Note on operation

Speed control operation is automatically interrupted if the speed is increased by more than approx. 16 mph (25 km/h) for longer than 20 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Decelerating

Option 1

▷ Pull operating lever towards the steering wheel (position **2**) until the desired speed is reached. The speed reached is maintained and stored when the lever is released.

Option 2

▷ Briefly move lever towards the steering wheel (position **2**) (a maximum of 10 times). The speed is reduced by 1 mph (1.6 km/h), each time the lever is moved towards the steering wheel.

Vehicles with PDK

Downshifts are carried out to improve deceleration (especially when driving downhill).

Interrupting automatic speed control operation

▷ Pull operating lever downwards briefly (position **3**) **or**

▷ Operate brake or clutch pedal **or**

▷ Switch PDK to selector lever position **N**.

▷ Please see the chapter "PORSCHE DOPPEL-KUPPLUNG (PDK)" on Page 174.

The speed driven before the interruption remains stored in the memory.

Automatic speed control operation is interrupted automatically:

– If the set vehicle speed is exceeded by more than approx. 16 mph (25 km/h) for longer than 20 seconds.

– If the actual vehicle speed falls to approx. 37 mph (60 km/h) below the set vehicle speed for longer than 60 seconds (upward slopes).

– For PSM control operations.

Resuming the stored speed

▷ Briefly push operating lever upwards (position **4**). The speed control accelerates/decelerates the vehicle to the stored speed.

The stored speed should only be recalled when traffic conditions and the road surface so permit.

Switching automatic speed control readiness off

▷ Press button **A** on the automatic speed control lever. The green readiness light in the speedometer goes off.

Note

The stored speed value is cleared when the vehicle is parked and the ignition is switched off.

Important note

On upward or downward slopes, the set speed cannot always be maintained by the automatic speed control.

▷ To obtain sufficient engine braking or a better engine-speed range, a lower gear needs to be selected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cupholder

(holder for drink cans and cups)

▷ Keep the cupholder closed while driving.

⚠ Warning!

Risk of scalding or damage due to spilling drinks.

▷ Only use beverage containers which fit.

▷ Never put overfull containers in the cupholder.

▷ Never place hot drinks in the cupholder.

Extending cupholder

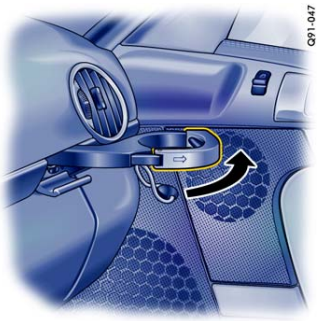
▷ Press the panel.
The panel opens.

▷ Press the symbol for the respective cupholder.
The cupholder extends out.

▷ Close panel in the middle.

The cupholder diameter can be increased by pulling it out to hold larger containers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Pulling cupholder out

- ▷ Pull out holder (**arrow**).
- ▷ Insert container.
- ▷ Carefully slide holder inwards to adjust it to the container size.

Closing cupholder

- ▷ Push cupholder drawer in.
- ▷ Open panel in the middle.
- ▷ Close and engage the cupholder.
- ▷ Close panel in the middle.

Ashtray

Opening

- ▷ Open ashtray lid.

Emptying

- ▷ Open ashtray and carefully pull out ash insert.
- ▷ Leave ashtray lid open.
  Push in ash insert.

⚠ Warning!

Danger of fire.

- ▷ Never use ashtray for waste paper disposal, as it could pose a fire hazard.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Danger!

Danger of fire in engine compartment due to burning cigars or cigarettes.
Serious personal injury or death could result from fire in the engine compartment.

- Do not throw any lit cigars or cigarettes out of the vehicle.
  They can be blown into the air inlets **A** by the air flow and cause a fire in the engine compartment.

Cigarette Lighter

Warning!

Danger of fire and burning.
The cigarette lighter is ready for use, regardless of the ignition lock position.

- Never leave unsupervised children in the car.
- Never touch the heating element or sides of the lighter.
- Hold the lighter by the knob only.

Heating lighter

- Open ashtray lid.
- Push in knob of the cigarette lighter.
  When ready for use, the lighter will snap back.

Note on operation

The lighter receptacle is not to be used for electrical accessories (except for the tire filling compressor).

Maximum power consumption: 150 W

- Please see the chapter “SOCKETS” on Page 245.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storage in the Passenger Compartment

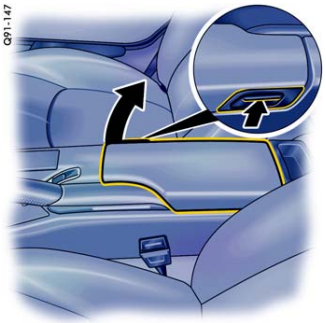
Warning!

Unsecured luggage and heavy objects may come loose during braking, rapid directional changes or in an accident and cause serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Do not transport any heavy objects in the storage trays.
- ▷ Do not carry unsecured luggage or objects in the passenger compartment.

Additional storage possibilities

- – in the doors,
- – in the door sill next to the passenger's seat,
- – in the center console,
- – storage tray with coin holder between seats,
- – glove compartment with CD and pen holder,
- – clothes hook on back of seat backrests (depending on vehicle equipment),
- – on engine compartment lid.



Storage tray between the seats

Opening

- ▷ Press release button and lift the lid.
  There is a coin holder in the forward part of the storage tray.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "SOCKETS" on Page 245.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Glove compartment

Warning!

Risk of injury by the glove compartment lid in case of an accident.

▷ Keep the glove compartment closed while driving.

Opening

▷ Pull the catch and open the lid.

Locking

▷ Lock the catch to secure the contents against unauthorized access.

CD holder

Occupied drawers are indicated by a red window.

Opening drawers

▷ Push the button of the drawer you wish to open.

Closing drawers

▷ Fold up CD drawer and close until it engages.

Pen holder

A pen can be clipped in on the right side of the CD holder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Luggage Storage on Engine Compartment Lid

Warning!

Unsecured luggage and heavy objects may come loose during braking, rapid directional changes or in an accident and cause serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Do not carry items of luggage or objects in the passenger compartment unsecured.
- ▷ Do not transport any heavy objects in the oddments trays.
- ▷ Keep shutters of the storage box closed while driving.

Risk of damage.

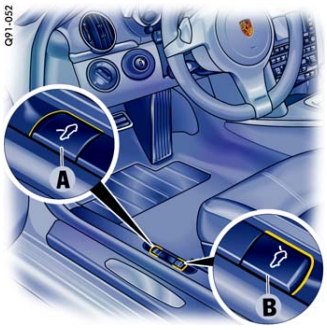
- ▷ Items of luggage or objects must neither hinder convertible top movement nor be in contact with the convertible top or rear window in such a way as to cause abrasion damage.

Storage box

Opening center storage tray

Move both shutters in the direction indicated by the arrows.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A - *Opening front luggage compartment lid*
B - *Opening rear luggage compartment lid*

Luggage Compartment Lids

Unlocking

▷ Operate the appropriate pull-button next to the driver's seat.
The luggage compartment is illuminated when the respective lid is open.

▷ Please see the chapter "LOAD SWITCH-OFF AFTER 2 HOURS OR 7 DAYS" on Page 246.

The luggage compartment lid can also be unlocked with the radio remote control.

▷ Please see the chapter "KEYS" on Page 15.

Important Note

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the front luggage compartment lid can be opened only by connecting an external electrical power source.

▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY UNLOCKING OF THE FRONT LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT LID" on Page 248.
or the description inside the fuse box lid.

Warning message

A warning message in the on-board computer comes on if the lids are not completely closed.

▷ Fully close the lid.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Opening front luggage compartment lid

Caution!

Risk of damage to luggage compartment lid or windshield wipers.

- Make sure that the windshield wipers are not folded out forwards when opening the luggage compartment lid.

- Raise lid slightly and unlatch the safety catch with the red lever (**arrow**).

Closing front and rear luggage compartment lid

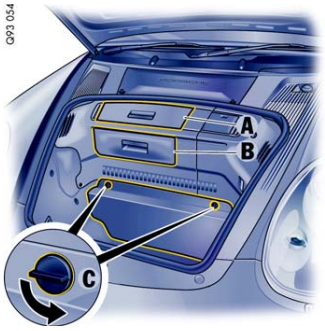
- Lower the lid and close it.
- Push the lid closed with the palm of your hand in the area of the lock.
  Check that the lid has correctly engaged in the lock.

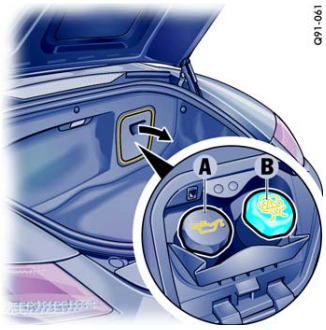
Warning!

Risk of loss of control or an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- Should you notice at any time while driving that one of the lids is not secured properly, please stop immediately in a suitable place and close it.
  The front lid may fly up impairing vision.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine





Luggage Compartment

Access covers A and B

⚠ **Caution!**

Risk of injury or damage.

▷ Do not store any objects behind the access covers **A** and **B**.

Tool box

Opening

▷ Unlock turn-locks **C**.

E - *Adapter for security wheel bolts*
F - *Tire filling compressor*
G - *Towing hook*
H - *Tool kit*
I - *Lever for convertible top emergency operation (under the tool kit)*
J - *Tire sealant*

▷ Open tool box and place it on the floor of the luggage compartment.

Closing

▷ Insert tool box into the guide pegs in the luggage compartment floor.

▷ Close tool box and lock the turn-locks **C.**

A - *Topping up engine oil*
B - *Check coolant level, top up if necessary*

Rear luggage compartment

The refilling points for engine oil and coolant are located behind the service flap in the rear luggage compartment.

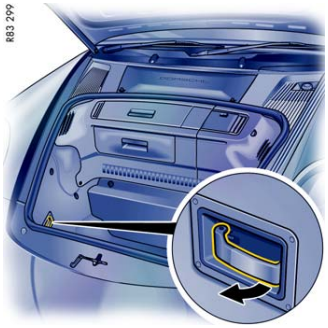
Opening the service flap

▷ Open the flap by pulling the handhold.

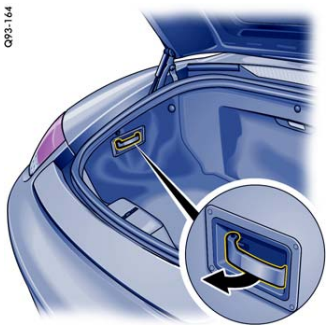
▷ Please see the chapter "ENGINE OIL LEVEL" on Page 199.

▷ Please see the chapter "COOLANT LEVEL" on Page 197.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Front luggage compartment



Rear luggage compartment

Trunk Entrapment

Your vehicle is equipped with an internal front/rear trunk release mechanism.

A person trapped in the luggage compartment can release the lid from the inside using the unlocking handle.
The handle is fluorescent and glows in the dark.

Note

▷ When loading the luggage compartment, make sure that items of luggage or other objects cannot become caught on the handle.
This could cause the luggage compartment to open unintentionally.

Warning message

A warning message in the on-board computer lights up when unlocking handle **A** is operated.

▷ Stop the vehicle immediately when the warning message lights up.

▷ Check the luggage compartments.

▷ Close the lid.

Front luggage compartment lid

Function with vehicle stationary

If the luggage compartment lid is unlocked with unlocking the handle, the lid can be opened from the inside immediately.

Function with vehicle in motion

If the luggage compartment lid is unlocked with unlocking the handle when a speed of 2 mph (3 km/h) is exceeded, the warning message in the on-board computer lights up.
At the same time, the lid is unlocked and the latch striker pops into the catch-hook position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Danger!

Risk of accident.
If the warning message in the on-board computer lights up when the vehicle is in motion, the lid may impact in front of the windshield and can tear off.
You can lose control of the vehicle, and serious personal injury or death may result.

- ▷ Stop the vehicle immediately when the warning message lights up.
- ▷ Check the luggage compartment.
- ▷ Close the lid.

Rear luggage compartment lid

If the rear luggage compartment lid is unlocked with unlocking the handle, the lid opens immediately.

- ▷ Stop the vehicle immediately when the warning message lights up.
- ▷ Check the luggage compartment.
- ▷ Close the lid.

Note

The front lid cannot be opened from the inside if the battery is disconnected or empty.
Safety reasons therefore require that you unscrew the latch striker of the front lid lock if you plan to put the vehicle out of operation for an extended period.

- ▷ Please consult your authorized Porsche dealer.
  They will advise you about the necessary measures.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

▷ Refer to the separate operating instructions before putting the PCM into operation.

▷ Please see the chapter "LOAD SWITCH-OFF AFTER 2 HOURS OR 7 DAYS" on Page 246.

⚠ Warning!

There is a danger of accident if you set or operate the on-board computer, radio, navigation system, telephone or other equipment when driving.
This could distract you from the traffic and cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Operate the components while driving only if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely.

▷ Carry out any complicated operating or setting procedures only with the vehicle stationary.

The reception conditions for the radio module integrated in the PCM change continuously as you drive. Interference from buildings, terrain and the weather is unavoidable.
FM stereo reception is particularly susceptible to varying reception conditions.

Electronic accessories should only be retrofitted by your authorized Porsche dealer.

Accessories which have not been tested and approved by Porsche may impair radio function and reception.

Navigation

When put into operation for the first time, a distance of approx. 30 miles (50 km) must be driven in order for the navigation system to complete the process of fine calibration.
The same applies when the tires are changed (e.g. summer/snow tires) or new tires fitted.
Full location accuracy is not yet achieved during the fine-calibration process.

If the vehicle has been transported (e.g. ferry, car train), the system may take a few minutes to determine the current location after it has been switched on.

Serious tire slip (e.g. spinning wheels on snow) may result in temporarily inaccurate navigation.

When the battery has been disconnected, it may take up to 15 minutes before the navigation system is operational again.

Car Audio Operation/Tips

For radio operation see your radio manual which is included with your on-board literature.

▷ Please see the chapter "LOAD SWITCH-OFF AFTER 2 HOURS OR 7 DAYS" on Page 246.

FM reception

A vehicle is not an ideal place to listen to a radio. Because the vehicle moves, reception conditions are constantly changing.
Buildings, terrain, signal distance and noise from other vehicles are all working against good reception.
Some conditions affecting FM may appear to be problems when they are not.

The following characteristics are completely normal for a given reception area, and they do not indicate any problem with the radio itself.

Note

Electronic accessories should only be installed by your authorized Porsche dealer.
Equipment which has not been tested and approved by Porsche may impair radio reception.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fading and drifting

FM range is limited to about 25 miles (40 km), except for some high power stations.

If a vehicle is moving away from the desired station's transmitter, the signal will tend to fade and/or drift. This condition is more prevalent with FM than AM, and is often accompanied by distortion. Fading and drifting can be minimized to a certain degree by careful attention to fine tuning or selection of a stronger signal.

Static and fluttering

When the line-of-sight link between a transmitter and vehicle is blocked by large buildings or mountains, the radio sound may be accompanied with static or fluttering because of the characteristic of FM.
In a similar effect, a fluttering noise is sometimes heard when driving along a tree-lined road.

This static and fluttering can be reduced by adjusting the tone control for greater bass response until the disturbance has passed.

Multipath

Because of the reflecting characteristics of FM, direct and reflected signals may reach the antenna at the same time (multipath) and cancel each other out.
As a vehicle moves through these electronic dead spots, the listener may hear a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Station swapping

When two FM stations are close to each other, and an electronic dead spot, such as static or multipath area, interrupts the original signal, sometimes the stronger second signal will be selected automatically until the original one returns.
This swapping can also occur as you drive away from the selected station and approach another station of a stronger signal.

Compact disc player

Caution!

To avoid damage to compact disc player and discs.

- ▷ Use only compact discs labeled as shown, having no dirt, damage or warpage.
- ▷ Never attempt to disassemble or oil any part of the player unit.
  Do not insert any object other than a disc into the slot.
  Remember there are no user-serviceable parts inside the compact disc player.
- ▷ Do not allow the disc to sustain any fingerprints, scrapes or stickers on the surfaces.
  This may cause poor sound quality.
  Hold the disc only on the edge or center hole.
- ▷ When not in use, take the disc out of the player, put the disc back into its case and store it away from dust, heat, damp and direct sunlight.
  Leaving the disc on the dashboard in the sun can damage the disc.
- ▷ If the disc gets dirty, clean the disc by wiping the surfaces from the center to the outside in a radial direction with a soft cloth.
  Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static record preservative.
  Disc cleaners are available in audio stores.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Car Telephone and Aftermarket Alarms

Important legal and safety information regarding the use of cellular telephones

Some states may prohibit the use of cellular telephones while driving a vehicle. Check the laws and regulations on the use of cellular telephones in the areas where you drive.

Danger!

Risk of an accident.
Severe personal injury or death can result in the event of an accident.
Looking away from the road or turning your attention away from your driving can cause an accident and serious or fatal injury.

When using your cellular telephone, you should always:

- ▷ Give full attention to your driving - pull off the road and park before making or answering a call if traffic conditions so require; **and**
- ▷ Keep both hands on the steering wheel - use hands-free operation (if available) - pull off the road and park before using a hand-held telephone.

It is essential to observe the telephone manufacturer's instructions before operating the telephone.

Any portable telephone or radio transmitter which is used in a Porsche must be properly installed in accordance with the technical requirements of Porsche.

The transmission power must not exceed 10 W.
The devices must possess a type approval for your vehicle and have an **"e" symbol**.

If you should require equipment with transmission power values greater than 10 W, please consult your authorized Porsche dealer for this purpose. The dealer is familiar with the technical requirements for installing devices of this kind.

The antennas for all radios and telephones with a transmitting antenna must be externally mounted.

The improper installation of radios or telephones or use of a radio or telephone with a transmitting antenna inside the car may cause **the warning lights to come on.**

Improper installation of such equipment can create a discharged battery or excessive current draw from added equipment.

If aftermarket systems are installed by non-dealership technicians or outside the selling dealer, problems may result. Installation of aftermarket equipment is not covered under the New Car Warranty.

- ▷ Consult your authorized Porsche dealer about the installation of non Porsche approved equipment.

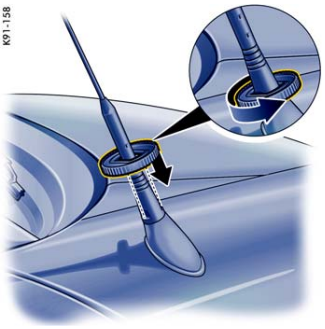
Reception quality

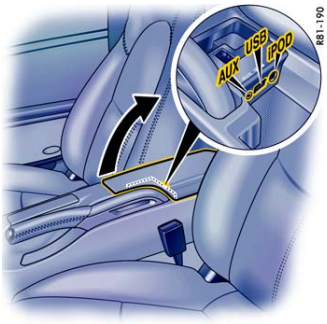
The reception quality of your car telephone will change constantly when you are driving. Interference caused by buildings, landscape and weather is unavoidable. It may become particularly difficult to hear when using the hands-free function due to external noise such as engine and wind noise.

Automatic car-wash

- ▷ Unscrew external antennas before using an automatic car-wash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine





Antenna

▷ Always unscrew the external antenna before using an automatic car-wash.

iPod, USB and AUX

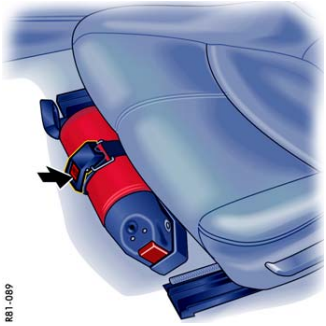
The interfaces for iPod, USB and AUX are located in the storage tray between the seats.

▷ Please refer to the chapter “External Audio Source” in the separate PCM/CDR operating instructions.

Note

Do not leave an iPod, USB storage device or an external audio source in the vehicle for a prolonged period as extreme ambient conditions (temperature fluctuations, air humidity) can occur in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

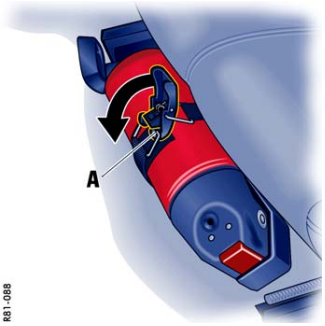


Fire Extinguisher

In cars equipped with a fire extinguisher, the extinguisher is fitted to the front of the driver's seat.

Taking out fire extinguisher

1. Hold fire extinguisher with one hand and press the PRESS button on the fastening strap with the other hand (**arrow**).
2. Remove fire extinguisher from mounting.



Inserting fire extinguisher

1. Place fire extinguisher in the mounting.
2. Engage fastening strap lug **A** in the tension jack and close tension jack (**arrow**).

Note

- ▷ Pay attention to the final control date on the fire extinguisher.
  If the fire extinguisher is used after its expiration date has elapsed, it may not operate properly.
- ▷ Follow the operating instructions on the fire extinguisher.
- ▷ The functional ability of the fire extinguisher should be checked by a specialist workshop every 1-2 years.
- ▷ After use, have the fire extinguisher refilled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1, 2, 3 - *Programmable buttons*
A - *Light-emitting diode for status identification*

HomeLink

The programmable HomeLink replaces up to three original hand-held transmitters used to operate various devices (e.g. garage door, gate to the property, alarm system).

You can program buttons **1 to 3** with a frequency of an original handheld transmitter.

Warning!

Risk of accident when using the HomeLink if persons, animals or objects are within the range of movement of the equipment that is being operated.

- ▷ When using the HomeLink, ensure that no persons, animals or objects are within the range of movement of the equipment that is being operated.
- ▷ Observe the safety notes for the original hand-held transmitter.

Preconditions for operating and programming the HomeLink:

- Ignition is switched on.
- Daytime driving lights/fog lights are switched off.

To operate the respective device:

- ▷ Press the appropriate button (**1, 2 or 3**). Light-emitting diode **A** lights up during signal transfer.

Note on operation

- ▷ Always use the HomeLink opener in the direction of travel.
  Otherwise, range restrictions cannot be ruled out.
- ▷ Before selling the vehicle, delete the programmed signals of the HomeLink.
- ▷ Please read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter to find out whether the original transmitter is equipped with fixed or changeable code.
- ▷ Always fit new batteries in your hand-held transmitter before programming the transmitter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Allocating signals to the buttons

▷ Please follow the operating instructions for the original hand-held transmitter.

Prior to programming the HomeLink for the first time

The following process deletes the standard codes set at the factory. Do not repeat the process if you program further buttons.

▷ Keep the two outer buttons **1 and 3** depressed for approx. 20 seconds until light-emitting diode **A** begins to flash quickly.
All programmed signals of buttons **1 to 3** are deleted.

Programming HomeLink with fixed code hand-held transmitters

1. Press and hold the desired button until the light-emitting diode begins to flash slowly.
You then have approx. 5 minutes to perform steps 2 and 3.
2. Hold the original hand-held transmitter approx. 0 to 12 in. (0 to 30 cm) in front of the marked position (figure) on the vehicle.
3. Press the transmit button on the original hand-held transmitter until the daytime driving lights flash three times (up to approx. 45 seconds).
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 to allocate other buttons.

Programming HomeLink with changeable code hand-held transmitters

1. Press and hold the desired button until the light-emitting diode begins to flash slowly.
You then have approx. 5 minutes to perform steps 2 and 3.
2. Hold the original hand-held transmitter approx. 0 to 12 in. (0 to 30 cm) in front of the marked position (figure) on the vehicle.
3. Press the transmit button on the original hand-held transmitter until the daytime driving lights flash three times (up to approx. 45 seconds).
4. To synchronize the system:
Press the programming button on the receiver for the garage door actuator.
Afterwards, you usually have approx. 30 seconds to initiate step 5.
5. Press the allocated HomeLink button twice. (With some devices, the button to be allocated must be pressed a third time in order to complete the setting process.)
6. Repeat the programming steps to allocate other buttons.

Note

Several attempts with different distances between the vehicle and the original hand-held transmitter might be necessary.

The daytime driving lights will flash once the 5 minutes have been exceeded. Programming must be repeated from the beginning.

▷ Please consult your authorized Porsche dealer if you have not been able to successfully allocate signals for the garage door opener to the buttons even though you have carefully followed the instructions in this chapter and the operating instructions for the original hand-held transmitter.

Deleting programmed signals of the HomeLink

(e.g., when selling the vehicle)

Keep the two outer buttons **1 and 3** depressed for approx. 20 seconds until light-emitting diode **A** begins to flash quickly.
All programmed signals of buttons **1 to 3** are deleted.

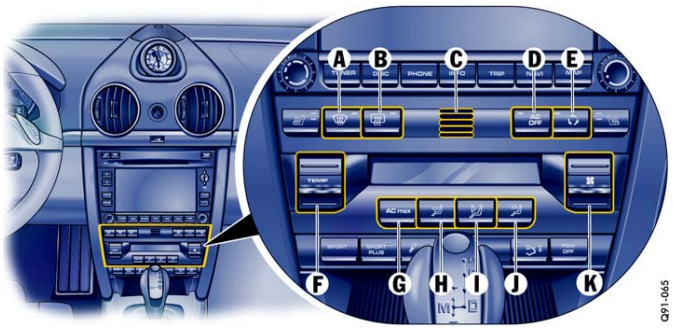
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Air Conditioning System, Heated Rear Window/Door Mirror Heating

Air conditioning 106
Automatic Air Conditioning System 109
Central and Side Vents 112
Fresh-air Intake 112
Heated Rear Window/Door Mirror Heating ... 113

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A - *Defrosting the windshield*
B - *Heated rear window*
C - *Temperature sensor*
D - *AC OFF button (air-conditioning compressor off/on)*
E - *Recirculating-air button*
F - *Temperature button*
G - *AC max*
H - *Air distribution to footwell*
I - *Air distribution to central and side vents*
J - *Air distribution to windshield*
K - *Blower speed button*

Air Conditioning

Air quantity, air distribution, and temperature can be set on the control panel.

The display panel shows the following

- Temperature
- Air-conditioning compressor on/off
- Blower speed
- AC max
- Air distribution

Setting temperature

▷ Press button **F** upwards or downwards respectively.

The selected temperature is shown on the display by a bar display.

If a **bar cannot be seen**, the temperature is set to **maximum cold**.

If **all bars** can be seen, the temperature is set to **maximum warm**.

Note

▷ For maximum cooling, activate AC max button **G**.

Adjusting blower speed

▷ Press button **K** upwards or downwards respectively.
The preset blower speed is increased or decreased.

The blower speed is shown on the display by a bar display.

The compressor is switched off at low blower speeds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Defrosting the windshield

▷ Press button **A** (switch on or off).
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.
The windshield is demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.
Air flows to the windshield only.

Recirculating-air setting

The outside-air supply is interrupted and only the inside air is circulated.

Warning!

Risk of accident due to impaired vision, resulting in serious personal injury or death. In recirculating-air setting, the windows may fog up.

▷ Only select recirculating-air setting for short periods.

▷ If the windows fog up, switch recirculating-air setting off immediately by pressing the recirculating-air button again and select the "Defrost windshield" function.

Switching recirculating-air mode on or off

▷ Press recirculating-air button **E**.
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.

AC OFF– switching the air-conditioning compressor on and off

The air conditioning compressor switches off automatically at temperatures below approx. 37 °F/3 °C and cannot be switched on, even manually.

Whenever outside temperatures exceed approx. 37 °F/3 °C, the air-conditioning compressor can be switched on or off manually.

The compressor can be switched off manual to save fuel.

▷ Press AC OFF button **D**.
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.
The compressor is switched off.

▷ If the interior temperature is too high, switch on the compressor again.

To dry incoming air in damp weather, do not switch off the air-conditioning compressor.
This prevents fogging of windows.

AC max operation

In AC max operation, the interior of your vehicle is cooled as quickly as possible.

▷ Press AC max button **H**.
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.

Air distribution

The individual air distributions can be combined as desired.
If an air distribution is not selected, no symbol appears in the display panel. Air flows then from all vents as well as to the windshield.

Recommended setting in Summer –
Air distribution to central and side vents

Recommended setting in Winter –
Air distribution to footwell and windshield

Air distribution to footwell

▷ Press button **H**.
The selection appears on the display panel.
The air flows to the footwell.

Air distribution to center and side vents

▷ Press button **I**.
The selection appears on the display panel.
The air flows from the central and side vents.
Vents must be open.

Air distribution to windshield

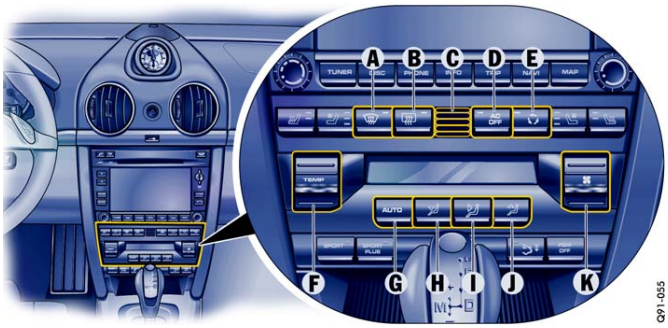
▷ Press button **J**.
The selection appears on the display panel.
The air flows to the windshield.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Information on air-conditioning compressor

- May switch off briefly to ensure sufficient engine cooling if the engine is operating under extreme load.
- The air-conditioning compressor switches off automatically at temperatures below approx. 37 °F/3 °C and cannot be switched on, even manually.
- Operates most effectively with the windows closed.
  If the vehicle has been in the sun for a long time, it is a good idea to ventilate the interior briefly with the windows open.
- Depending on the outside temperature and humidity, condensation can drip from the evaporator and form a pool under the car.
  This is normal and not a sign of leakage.
- If uncooled air flows out when the lowest temperature has been set, switch off the air conditioning compressor and have the fault remedied.
  Please contact your authorized Porsche dealer for further information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A *- Defrosting the windshield*
B *- Heated rear window*
C *- Temperature sensor*
D *- AC OFF button (air-conditioning compressor off/on)*
E *- Recirculating-air button*
F *- Temperature button*
G *- AUTO button (automatic mode)*
H *- Air distribution to footwell*
I *- Air distribution to central and side vents*
J *- Air distribution to windshield*
K *- Blower speed button*

Automatic Air Conditioning System

The automatic air-conditioning system controls the preselected interior temperature completely automatically.
If necessary, the automatic system can be manually adjusted.

Automatic mode

▷ Press AUTO button **G**.
AUTO will appear on the display panel.
Air quantity and distribution are automatically controlled and variations are compensated.

All automatic setting functions can be individually changed.
This setting is retained until the appropriate function button is pressed again or the AUTO button is pressed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting temperature

▷ Press button **F** upwards or downwards respectively.

To suit personal comfort, the interior temperature can be adjusted between 61 °F and 85 °F/16 °C and 29.5 °C.
Recommendation: 72 °F/22 °C.

If "LO" or "HI" appears on the display, the system is operating at maximum cooling or heating power.
Automatic control is no longer active.

Note

If the preselected temperature is changed, the blower speed can increase automatically in automatic mode.
The desired temperature is reached more quickly this way.

Sensors

To avoid affecting the performance of the air-conditioning system:

▷ Do not cover the sun sensor on the instrument panel or the temperature sensor **C**.

Defrosting the windshield

▷ Press button **A** (switch on or off).
The windshield is defogged or defrosted as quickly as possible.
Air flows to the windshield only.
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.

AC OFF – switching compressor for air-conditioning system on and off

The air-conditioning compressor switches off automatically at temperatures below approx. 37 °F/3 °C and cannot be switched on, even manually.

Whenever outside temperatures exceed approx. 37 °F/3 °C, the air-conditioning compressor is always switched on in automatic mode.
The compressor can be switched off to save fuel, but control comfort is then limited:

▷ Press AC OFF button **D**.
The compressor is switched off.
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.

▷ If the interior temperature is too high, switch compressor back on or press AUTO button.

To dry incoming air in damp weather, do not switch off the air-conditioning compressor.
This prevents fogging of windows.

Adjusting blower speed

▷ Press button **K** upwards or downwards respectively.
The preset blower speed is increased or decreased.

The speed stages are indicated by a bar display.

If the button is pressed downwards at the lowest blower stage, the blower and automatic control are switched off. "OFF" will appear on the display field.

Pressing the button upwards or pressing the AUTO button switches the blower and automatic control back on again.

Recirculating-air setting

Warning!

Risk of accident due to impaired vision, resulting in serious personal injury or death. In recirculating-air setting, the windows may fog up.

▷ Only select recirculating-air setting for short periods.

▷ If the windows fog up, switch recirculating-air setting off immediately by pressing the circulating-air button again and select the "Defrost windshield" function.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching recirculating-air setting on or off

▷ Press button **E**.
The outside-air supply is interrupted and only the inside air is circulated.
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.

Over approx. 37 °F/3 °C

If the air-conditioning compressor was off, it switches on automatically. The duration of recirculating-air setting is not limited.

Below approx. 37 °F/3 °C

The air-conditioning compressor is switched off. Recirculating-air setting is automatically ended after approx. 3 minutes.

Air distribution

The individual air distributions can be combined as desired.

Recommended setting in Summer:
Air distribution to central and side vents.

Recommended setting in Winter:
Air distribution to footwell and windshield.

Air distribution to footwell

▷ Press button **H**.
The air flows to the footwell.
The selection appears on the display panel.

Air distribution to central and side vents

▷ Press button **I**.
The air flows from the central and side vents.
Vents must be open.
The selection appears on the display panel.

Air distribution to windshield

▷ Press button **J**.
The air flows to the windshield.
The selection appears on the display panel.

Note on operation

▷ On vehicles with the Sport Chrono Package Plus, individual air conditioning settings can be stored on your vehicle key.
Please observe the chapter "Individual Memory" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

General instructions for air-conditioning compressor

– Can switch off briefly if engine is under an extreme load to ensure sufficient engine cooling.
– Switches off automatically at temperatures below approx. 37 °F/3 °C and cannot be switched on, even manually.
– Operates most effectively with windows closed.
If the car has been in the sun for a long time, it is a good idea to ventilate the interior briefly with the windows open.
– Depending on the outside temperature and humidity, condensation can drip from the evaporator and form a pool under the vehicle.
This is normal and not a sign of leakage.
– If uncooled air flows out when the lowest temperature has been set, switch off the air-conditioning compressor and have the fault repaired at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A - *Continuous opening and closing*
B - *Setting vent direction*

Central and Side Vents

Opening vents

▷ Rotate knurled wheel upward.

Closing vents

▷ Rotate knurled wheel downward.

Changing air flow direction

▷ Move the vanes to make the air flow in the desired direction.

Outside air or conditioned air can be delivered from all vents, depending on the air-distribution setting on the operating panel.

Fresh-air Intake

To ensure proper air intake:

▷ Keep the fresh-air inlet between the luggage compartment lid and the windshield free from snow, ice and leaves.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Heated Rear Window/Door Mirror Heating

The heated rear window/door mirror heating is ready for operation when the ignition is on.

Switching on

▷ Press button.
The light-emitting diode in the button lights up.

After approx. 15 minutes, the heating switches off automatically.
The heater can be switched back on by pressing the button again.

Switching off

▷ Press button.
The light-emitting diode in the button goes out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instruments, On-Board Computer, Warnings

Instrument Panel USA Models 116
Instrument Panel Canada Models 118
Automatic Speed Control Indicator light 120
Instrument Illumination 120
Trip Odometer 121
Speedometer 122
Changing over between Miles / Kilometers .. 122
Tachometer 123
Turn Signal Indicator Light 123
High Beam Indicator Light 123
Gear Shift Indicator
(in vehicles with manual transmission) 123
Cooling System 124
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) 125
Fuel 126
Clock 127
Outside Temperature 127
Check Engine (Emission Control) 129
On-Board Computer (BC) 130
Warnings on the instrument panel and the on-
board computer 162

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel USA Models

Also refer to the corresponding chapters in the Owner's Manual.

1. Speedometer with analogue display
2. Automatic speed control indicator light
3. Tire pressure warning light
4. Turn signal indicator light, left/right
5. Tachometer
6. High beam indicator light
7. ABS warning light
8. Cooling system
   Temperature gage, warning light
9. Fuel
   Level gage, warning light
10. Adjustment button for instrument illumination and trip counter
11. Odometer and daily trip mileage display
12. Light sensor for instrument illumination
13. Airbag warning light
14. Check Engine warning light
    (Emission control warning light)
15. Central warning light
16. On-board computer display
17. Porsche Stability Management
    PSM Multifunctional light
18. Brake warning light
19. Safety belt warning light
20. Gear display
21. PDK transmission, selector lever position
22. Clock and outside temperature display
23. Adjustment button for clock

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lights light up for a lamp check.

Note

Warnings that have been given are stored in the appropriate control unit memory and can be read out at an authorized Porsche dealer.

This information can help to warn you about situations which may be hazardous to you or your car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q93-070

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Canada Models

Also refer to the corresponding chapters in the Owner's Manual.

1. Speedometer with analogue display
2. Automatic speed control indicator light
3. Tire pressure warning light
4. Turn signal indicator light, left/right
5. Tachometer
6. High beam indicator light
7. ABS warning light
8. Cooling system
   Temperature gage, warning light
9. Fuel
   Level gage, warning light
10. Adjustment button for instrument illumination and trip counter
11. Odometer and daily trip mileage display
12. Light sensor for instrument illumination
13. Airbag warning light
14. Check Engine warning light
    (Emission control warning light)
15. Central warning light
16. On-board computer display
17. Porsche Stability Management
    PSM Multifunctional light
18. Brake warning light
19. Safety belt warning light
20. Gear display
21. PDK transmission, selector lever position
22. Clock and outside temperature display
23. Adjustment button for clock

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lights light up for a lamp check.

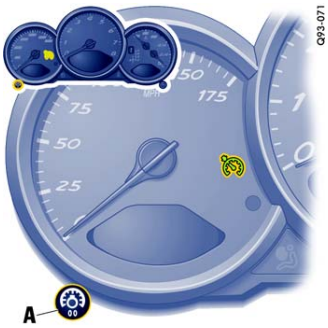
Note

Warnings that have been given are stored in the appropriate control unit memory and can be read out at an authorized Porsche dealer.

This information can help to warn you about situations which may be hazardous to you or your car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A - *Adjustment button for instrument illumination and trip counter*

Automatic Speed Control Indicator light

Indicates automatic speed control readiness.

Instrument Illumination

The illumination is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness by the light sensor in the tachometer.

In addition, when the car lights are switched on, the instrument and switch symbol brightness can be manually adjusted.

Warning!

Risk of loss of control or accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Do not reach through the steering-wheel spokes while driving.

Note

When the car lights are switched on, the instrument lighting for light dials switches on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

Dimming instrument illumination

▷ Turn adjustment button **A** in the appropriate direction and hold it until the desired brightness has been reached.

The chosen level of brightness is indicated by a bar display in the display field of the on-board computer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trip Odometer

Warning!

Risk of loss of control or accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Do not reach through the steering-wheel spokes while driving.

Resetting to zero

▷ Press adjustment button **A** for approximately one second **or**

▷ Reset the distance in the "SET" menu of the on-board computer.
Please see the chapter "SET BASIC SETTING ON ON-BOARD COMPUTER" on Page 159.

After exceeding 6,213 miles or 9,999 kilometers, the counter returns to "0".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speedometer

The digital speedometer is integrated in the on-board computer.
The indication changes from mph to km/h when the units are changed from miles to kilometers.

Changing over between Miles / Kilometers

The units of the distance and speed displays can be changed in the “SET” menu of the on-board computer.

▷ Please see the chapter “SET BASIC SETTING ON ON-BOARD COMPUTER” on Page 159.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tachometer

The tachometer shows the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).
The beginning of the red marks at the right end of the scale indicates the maximum permissible engine rpm.
A speed limiter prevents the engine from being overrevved during acceleration. Before reaching this area, the next **higher** gear should be selected.
Shift to the next **lower** gear when the engine rpm drops below 1,500 rpm.

Caution!

To avoid severe engine damage.

▷ Always observe the engine rpm before downshifting to a lower gear, so you do not exceed the maximum engine rpm.

Turn Signal Indicator Light

Flashes in synchronism with the turn signals.

Left arrow – left turn signals
Right arrow – right turn signals

▷ If the frequency of the display becomes noticeably faster, check the operation of the turn signals.

High Beam Indicator Light

Lights when high beam or headlight flasher is switched on.
The indicator light goes out when the high beams are switched off.

The indicator light flashes in the event of cornering light failure.

Gear Shift Indicator

(in vehicles with manual transmission)

The consumption-orientated gear shift indicator **A** on the display panel of the on-board computer assists a fuel-saving driving style. The gear shift indicator lights up as a recommendation to shift up to the next-higher gear depending on the selected gear, engine rpm and accelerator pedal position.

▷ When the gear shift indicator **A** lights up, change to the next higher gear to decrease fuel consumption.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q93-075

Cooling System

Temperature gage (ignition on)

USA: Display in °F
Canada: Display in °C

Pointer to the left – engine cold

▷ Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loading.

Pointer in the middle – normal operating temperature

The pointer may move up to the red area when engine is heavily loaded and outside temperature is high, but should return to "normal" when engine load is reduced.

Warning light "A"

If the **coolant temperature** is too high, the warning light **comes on**.
Additionally, a warning is displayed in the on-board computer.

▷ Pull off the road, turn off the engine and allow to cool.

▷ Check radiator and air passages in front end of car for obstructions.

▷ Check coolant level.
If necessary, add coolant and have fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
Please see the chapter "COOLANT LEVEL" on Page 197.

Note

To prevent excessive temperatures, the cooling-air passages must not be restricted by coverings (e.g. films, "stone guards").

If the **coolant level** is too low, the warning light **flashes**.
Additionally, a warning is displayed in the on-board computer.

▷ Switch engine off and allow to cool.

▷ Add coolant after the engine has cooled to the touch.

▷ Have the cause of the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
Please see the chapter "COOLANT LEVEL" on Page 197.

Caution!

Risk of engine damage.

▷ If the warning lights come on even though coolant level is correct, do not continue driving.

▷ Have the fault remedied at the nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Engine compartment blower fan

In addition, this warning light **flashes** to indicate a fault in the **engine compartment blower fan**.

▷ Have the cause of the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)

Indicator for PDK selector lever position and engaged gear

When the engine is running, the selector lever position and the engaged forward gear are indicated in gates **D** or **M**.

Warning messages

If the selector lever is between two positions

– Effects:
The corresponding selector lever position flashes on the instrument cluster **and** the warning "Selector lever not engaged" appears on the on-board computer.
Remedy:
Operate the footbrake and engage the selector lever properly.

If there is a fault in the transmission

– Depending on priority, the warning "Transmission emergency run" in white or red lettering or the warning "Transmission temperature too high" is displayed on the on-board computer.

Warning "Transmission emergency run" **white**

▷ Effects:
Restricted gearshift comfort,
Failure of reverse gear.
Remedy:
Have the fault repaired immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Warning "Transmission emergency run" **red**

– Effect:
Vehicle can be driven only until it comes to a stop.
Remedy:
It is not possible to continue driving. Immediately stop the vehicle in a suitable place. Have the vehicle towed to an authorized Porsche dealer.

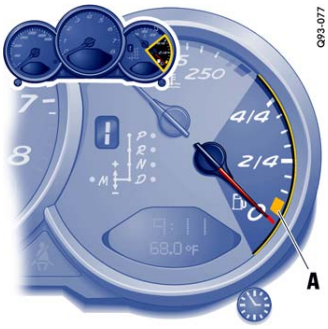
Warning "Transmission temperature too high"

– Effects:
"Warning jerks" can be felt when driving off and the engine power may be restricted.
Remedies:
Do not hold the vehicle with the accelerator on a hill, for example. Hold the vehicle with the brake. Reduce engine load. If possible, stop the vehicle in a suitable place. Allow the engine to run in selector lever position **P** or **N** until the warning disappears.

▷ Please see the chapter "REDUCED DRIVING PROGRAM" on Page 180.

▷ Please see the chapter "PORSCHE DOPPELKUPPLUNG (PDK)" on Page 174.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Fuel

Level gage

When the ignition is on the fuel level is displayed.

▷ Please see the chapter "CAPACITIES" on Page 281.

If the vehicle's inclination changes (e.g. going up or downhill), minor deviations in the indication may occur.

Note

If a small quantity of fuel is added to a nearly empty fuel tank, the fuel gage cannot measure the added fuel accurately. The „remaining range" readout will also be incorrect.

Warning light "A"

When the engine is running, the warning light of the level gage **lights up** if less than approx. 2.6 U.S. gallons (10 liters) of fuel remains in the tank.
Additionally, a warning is displayed in the on-board computer.

▷ Fill up at the next opportunity.

Caution!

To prevent damage to the emission control system and engine.

▷ Never drive the tank completely out of fuel.

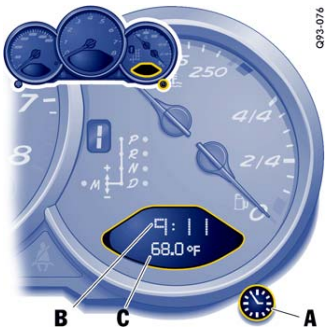
▷ Avoid high cornering speeds after the warning lights have come on.

▷ Please see the chapter "EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM" on Page 208.

If the level gage warning light flashes, there has been a system fault.
Additionally, a warning is displayed in the on-board computer.
There will then be no reserve warning.

▷ To remedy the fault, go to an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A - *Adjustment button for clock*
B - *Clock*
C - *Outside temperature display*

Clock

The **clock** is blanked out approximately four minutes after the ignition is switched off or when the car is locked.

Setting the time

Warning!

Risk of loss of control or accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Do not reach through the steering-wheel spokes while driving.

▷ Switch ignition on.

Setting hours

▷ Press adjustment button **A** for about one second.
Hour display flashes.

▷ Turn button in the appropriate direction:
to right – increase hours figure
to left – decrease hours figure.

Adjustment in hours – turn button briefly
Fast adjustment (display cycles) –
turn and hold button.

Setting minutes

▷ Press adjustment button again.
Minutes display flashes.

▷ Set by rotating as in hours mode.

Leaving adjustment mode

Automatically after one minute **or**:

▷ Press adjustment button again.

When adjustment mode is deliberately left by pressing the button, the time begins precisely to the second.

Note

The time mode can be changed between 12h and 24h in the on-board computer.

Outside Temperature

The outside temperature display **C** does not indicate, if ice is on the road.
Even if a temperature above 32 °F (0 °C) is displayed, ice may still form on the road, for instance on bridges or when the road passes through a heavily shaded area.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Battery

If the battery voltage drops abruptly, a warning message will be displayed by the on-board computer.

If the warning is displayed by the on-board computer while the engine is running or while driving:

▷ Stop the car in a safe place and stop the engine.

Possible causes

– Defect in the battery charging system.

– Broken drive belt.

Warning!

Risk of engine damage with resultant loss of control and accident, leading to serious personal injury or death.
A broken drive belt means there is no power assistance to the steering (more effort is required to steer) and coolant pump function will stop.

▷ Do not continue driving.

▷ Have the fault remedied at the nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Central Warning Light

The central warning light on the instrument panel lights up if there are warning messages in the INFO menu.

The messages can be called in the on-board computer INFO menu:

▷ Please see the chapter “INFO WARNING MESSAGES” on Page 136.

Brake Warning Light USA
Brake Warning Light Canada

The warning light on the instrument panel lights up:

– if the handbrake is on,

– if the brake fluid level is low,

– if the brake pads have reached the wear limit,

– if the brake circuit division is defective.

Additionally, a warning is displayed by the on-board computer.

▷ Please see the chapter “WARNINGS ON THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND THE ON-BOARD COMPUTER” on Page 162.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Check Engine (Emission Control)

Warning Light

The emission control system detects malfunctions early that could, for example, cause increased pollutant emissions or consequential damage. Faults are indicated by a continuously lit or flashing instrument panel warning light.
The faults are recorded in the control unit's fault memory.

The warning light in the instrument panel lights up when the ignition is switched on as a bulb check and goes out approx. 4 seconds after the engine starts. If the warning light does not light up, have the bulb replaced promptly.

The warning light in the instrument panel flashes to indicate operating states (e.g. engine misfiring) which might cause damage to certain parts of the emission control system.

▷ In this case, immediately reduce the engine load by easing off the accelerator.

▷ In order to avoid consequential damage to the engine or emission control system (e.g. catalytic converter), have the fault diagnosed and rectified immediately at the nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

If the warning light in the instrument panel lights up permanently without flashing before and remains on while driving, it suggests:

– a potential engine control problem and the need for system service **or**

– an improperly fastened tank cap **or**

– the vehicle was refueled while the engine was running.

▷ Stop immediately at a suitable and secure place and check tank cap for proper fastening. If tank cap was fastened correctly, see your authorized Porsche dealer for service as soon as possible.

Caution!

If the check engine warning light in the instrument panel is flashing, serious catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur.
Prolonged driving with the check engine warning light on could cause damage to the emission control system. It also could affect fuel economy and driveability.

▷ Have the fault remedied at the nearest authorized Porsche dealer immediately.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q93-079

On-Board Computer (BC)

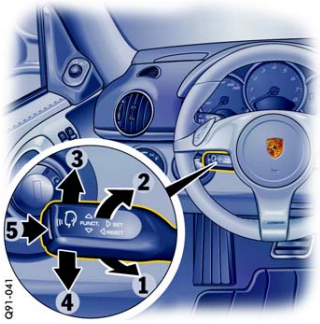
Display field

The display field is beneath the tachometer.

Readiness for operation

– With ignition switched on,

– with engine running.



Q91-041

Operation, controls

It is not possible to describe all details of the on-board computer functions in this Owner's Manual. However, the examples will quickly familiarize you with the operational principle and help you to navigate through the menu structure.

You can restore the factory default settings at any time by using the "SET" menu.

Operating lever

The on-board computer is operated with the lower left lever on the steering column.

Selecting functions of the on-board computer

▷ Push lever up **3** or down **4**.

Confirming selection (Enter)

▷ Push the lever forward **1**.

Moving back one or several selection levels

▷ Pull the lever back **2** once or several times **or**

▷ Select the arrow on the on-board computer display with the operating lever and push the operating lever forward **1**.

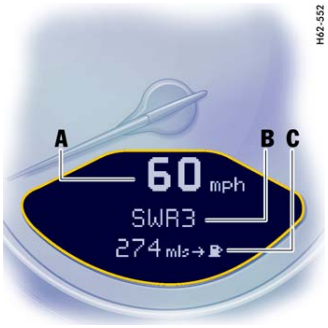
Note

You can always return to the basic menu by pulling the operating lever several times.

5 - Button for voice control

▷ Please refer to the separate operating instructions for Porsche Communication Management (PCM).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



H62-552

A - *Digital speedometer*
B - *Central display*
C - *Bottom display*

Functions and display possibilities

Note

The available items and displays in the on-board computer depend on the equipment of your vehicle. For this reason it is possible that some of the items and displays shown here are not available in your on-board computer.

Basic setting

– Central display: .... Radio station

The central line **B** of the on-board computer can be selected in the SET menu.

Calling on-board computer functions in display "C"

▷ Push operating lever up or down (selection field **D** must be switched off).

The following displays can be called step by step:

– Average speed (ø mph),

– Average consumption (ø mpg),

– Range on remaining fuel (mls ➔ ⛽),

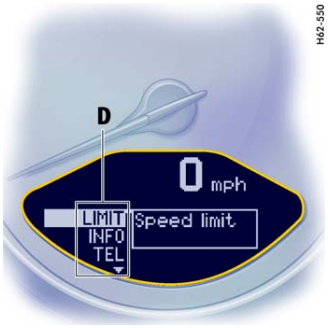
– Tire pressure

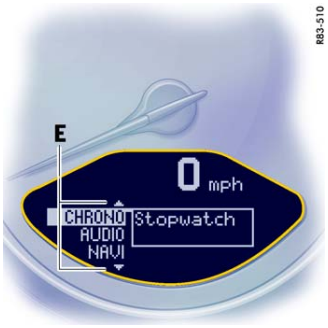
– Navigation information (if activated in the SET menu).

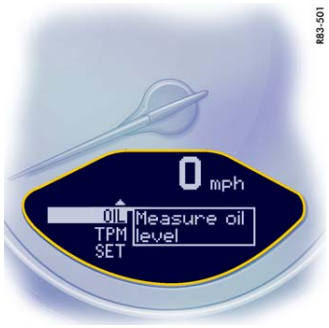
Note

The values "Average speed", "Average consumption" and "Daily trip mileage" can be reset to zero in the SET menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine







D - Switching selection field "D" on or off

▷ Push operating lever forward or back.

E - Arrow symbol for continuation

Arrow symbol: ▽

▷ Push operating lever down in order to page through the menu.

Arrow symbol: △

▷ Push operating lever up in order to page through the menu.

The following menus are available, depending on vehicle equipment:

1. LIMIT
2. INFO
3. TEL
4. CHRONO
5. AUDIO
6. NAVI
7. OIL
8. TPM
9. SET

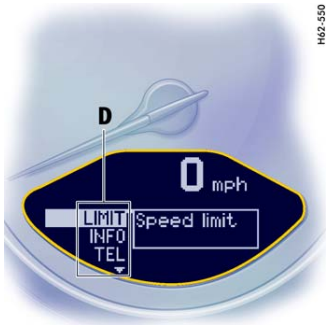
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LIMIT
Acoustic warning signal for speed limit

The acoustic warning signal can be activated for speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h).
The signal sounds when the preset speed is exceeded.
For the signal to sound again, the driving speed must fall below the preset speed by at least 3 mph (5 km/h).

Switching on selection field "D"

▷ Push operating lever forward.



Setting the speed

▷ Select LIMIT with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Option 1:
Accepting current speed

▷ Push operating lever forward.

The acoustic warning signal is activated for the current speed.

Display: ▣

If the vehicle is stationary, the message “Cannot be accepted with car stopped” is displayed.

Option 2:
Presetting speed

▷ Select “LIMIT active” with the operating lever:

☐ not active

▣ active

▷ If “not active”, push the operating lever forward.

▷ Select “xx mph” with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

H62-510

▷ Push operating lever slightly up or down until the desired speed is reached.

upwards: speed is increased
downwards: speed is decreased

Note

Holding the lever up or down for a longer period will adjust the speed in steps of 6 mph (10 km/h).

▷ Push operating lever forward.

Switching the acoustic warning signal off

▷ Select "LIMIT active" with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.

Display: ☐

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INFO
Warning messages

Switching on selection field "D"

▷ Push operating lever forward.

Calling warning messages

▷ Select INFO with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.

▷ Select "Messages" with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.

Any existing warning messages can be called using the operating lever.
You also can call warning messages which were cancelled during the journey (but only until the next time the ignition is switched on).

▷ Push operating lever forward.

▷ Push operating lever forwards or pull backwards.
The display returns to the Info menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service

Switching on selection field "D"

▷ Push operating lever forward.

Recalling service information

▷ Select INFO with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.

▷ Select "Service" with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.

▷ The time until the next service is displayed in miles and days.

TEL
Telephone information

Switching on selection field "D"

▷ Push operating lever forward.

Recalling telephone information

▷ Select TEL with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

You can recall phone calls, e.g. calls that arrived during your absence, via the menu item “Missed calls”.

Example:
Selecting from the telephone book and calling

▷ Select “Phone book” with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.

▷ Select a person to call and push the operating lever forward.
The connection is established.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▷ Push the operating lever forward to end the call.

Incoming call

▷ Select “Accept” or “Refuse” and push the operating lever forward.

Note

Rejected phone calls can be recalled with the menu item “Missed calls”.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHRONO
Stopwatch

You can use the stopwatch to measure time intervals, e.g. on the race circuit or on work-related journeys. Measured lap times can be stored and evaluated if the vehicle is equipped with Porsche Communication Management (PCM).

▷ Please observe the chapter "Sport display" in the separate PCM operating instructions.

Stopwatch on the instrument panel

The stopwatch has an analogue and a digital display.
The large pointer of the analogue display measures the seconds. The two small pointers measure hours and minutes. The display re-starts at zero after 12 hours.
Seconds and increments of 1/100th of a second can be read on the digital display.
The digital display and the display in the on-board computer can indicate up to 99 hours and 59 minutes.

The stopwatch can be swivelled both to the left and to the right.

Stopwatch displays:

– on the stopwatch on the instrument panel,

– in the on-board computer menu CHRONO,

– on the performance display in the PCM.

Starting/stopping stopwatch

All stopwatch displays are started and stopped via the on-board computer menu CHRONO.

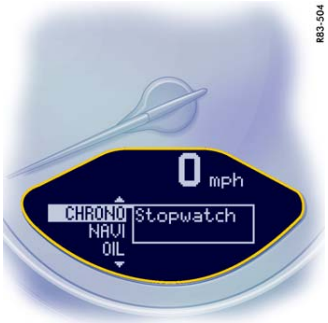
Note on operation

When you leave the CHRONO menu while the stopwatch is running, measurement will continue.

The stopwatch stops after the ignition is switched off. If the ignition is switched on again within approx. 4 minutes, the stopwatch will continue to run.

The only way to reset the stopwatch to zero is by selecting "Reset" in the CHRONO menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Starting the timing

- ▷ Push operating lever forward.
  The selection field is switched on.
- ▷ Select CHRONO with the operating lever.
- ▷ Push operating lever forward.
- ▷ Push operating lever forward.
  The time runs on all stopwatch displays.
  The on-board computer display changes to the "Stop timing/Intermediate time" selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Stopping the timing

After time measurement is started, the on-board computer display changes to the “Stop timing/Intermediate time”.

▷ Select “Stop timing” with the operating lever.

▷ Push lever forward.
The time is stopped in all stopwatch displays, and the on-board computer display changes to the “Continue/Reset” selection.

The timing can be continued or reset to zero.

Continue timing

After timing has been stopped, the on-board computer display changes to the “Continue/Reset” selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▷ Push operating lever forward.
The stopwatch displays continue the timing.

The on-board computer display returns to the "Stop timing/Intermediate time" selection. You can stop the stopwatch or measure an intermediate time.

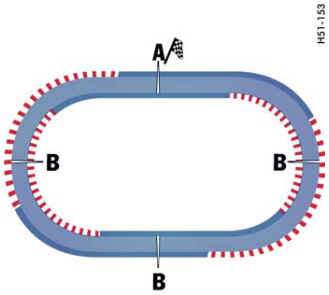
Resetting the time

After timing has been stopped, the on-board computer display changes to the "Continue/Reset" selection.

▷ Select "Reset" with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.
The display returns to the "Start timing" selection.
The stopwatch displays in the instrument panel and the on-board computer are reset to zero.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A - *Lap*
B - *Intermediate time*

Displaying intermediate times

Several intermediate times can be displayed for a route or for a lap on the race circuit. The intermediate times **B** are for your information.
Measured lap times **A** can be stored and evaluated if the vehicle is equipped with Porsche Communication Management (PCM).

After timing has been started, the on-board computer display changes to the "Stop timing/Intermediate time" selection.

▷ Select "Intermediate time" with the operating lever and push the operating lever forwards.

The intermediate time will be displayed for approx. 5 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The on-board computer display then returns to the "Stop timing/Intermediate time" selection.

▷ You can stop the stopwatch or measure another intermediate time.

In order to start timing a new lap:

The "New lap?" selection appears for 5 seconds after selection of "Intermediate time".

▷ Select "New lap?" with the operating lever and push the operating lever forwards.

The new lap is displayed on the on-board computer and the PCM. Timing on the on-board computer and on the PCM begins from zero. The stopwatch in the instrument panel continues to show the total time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▷ The on-board computer display returns to the "Stop timing/Intermediate time" selection after a short period.
- ▷ You can stop the stopwatch or measure another intermediate time or a new lap.

AUDIO

Switching on selection field "D"

- ▷ Push operating lever forward.

Selecting a radio station

- ▷ Select "AUDIO" with the operating lever.
- ▷ Push operating lever forward.
- ▷ Select the desired station.
- ▷ Push the operating lever up or down.

NAVI

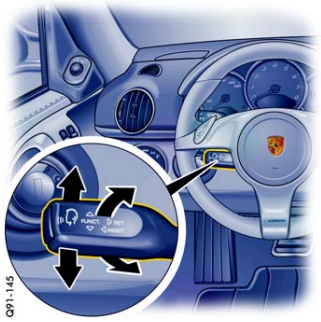
Switching on selection field "D"

- ▷ Push operating lever forward.

Select destination

- ▷ Select "NAVI" with the operating lever.
- ▷ Push operating lever forward.
- ▷ Select the desired function with the operating lever:
- – Last destinations
- – Destination memory
- – Route guidance

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



TPM
Tire Pressure Monitoring

▷ Please see the chapter “TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES (68 °F/20 °C)” on Page 277.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring continuously monitors tire pressure and tire temperature on all four wheels and warns the driver when the tire pressure is too low.

The display as well as the settings for the Tire Pressure Monitoring take place on the on-board computer.
However, you must still adjust the tire pressure on the wheel.

▷ The driver is responsible for filling the tires correctly and making the correct settings on the on-board computer.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring offers the following functions:

– Display of the actual tire pressure while the vehicle is in motion.
– Display of the deviation from the required pressure (refilling pressure).
– Display of currently set tire size and type.
– Tire pressure warnings in two stages.

⚠ Warning!

▷ Despite the advantages offered by the Tire Pressure Monitoring, it is still the driver’s responsibility to update the corresponding settings in the on-board computer and maintain the pressure in the tires.
Low tire pressure reduces the road safety of the vehicle and destroys the tire and wheel.

▷ When a flat tire has been displayed, immediately stop in a suitable place and check the tires for damage. If necessary, remedy the damage with a tire sealant.

▷ Do not by any means continue to drive with damaged tires.

▷ Sealing the tire with tire sealant is only an emergency repair, so you can drive to the next authorized Porsche dealer. The maximum permitted speed is **50 mph (80 km/h)**.

▷ Do not drive with tires whose tire pressure drops again in a short period of time. In cases of doubt, have tires checked by an authorized Porsche dealer.

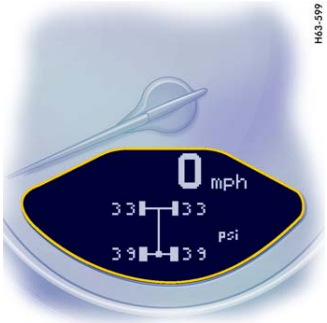
▷ Damaged tires must be immediately replaced by an authorized Porsche dealer.
Tire repairs are not permissible under any circumstances.

▷ If a fault occurs in the Tire Pressure Monitoring (e.g. defective wheel transmitter), contact an authorized Porsche dealer immediately and have the damage repaired.
The tire pressure will not be monitored at all or will be monitored only partially by defective Tire Pressure Monitoring.

▷ Tires lose air over time without a tire defect being present. A tire pressure warning will then appear in the on-board computer display. Correct the tire pressure at the next opportunity.

▷ The Tire Pressure Monitoring gives a warning about tire damage due to natural pressure loss as well as about a gradual loss of pressure due to foreign objects.
The Tire Pressure Mnitoring cannot warn you about tire damage that occurs suddenly (e.g. flat tire due to abrupt external effects).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Tire pressure function of the on-board computer

The tire pressure function of the on-board computer displays the tire pressures (actual pressure) dependent on temperature in the four wheels.
You can watch the tire pressure rise as the temperature increases while driving.
This display is only for information.

▷ Under no circumstances should the tire pressures be changed based on this display.

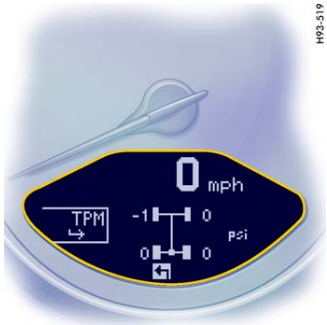
⚠ Warning!

This display is for informational purposes only. Under no circumstances should the tire pressures be changed based on this display. Changing the tire pressure to incorrect pressures could adversely affect the performance, driving characteristics, and safety of your vehicle.

▷ Maintain tire pressures according to the units indicated on the tire pressure plate, located on the drivers side door of the vehicle.

Displaying the tire pressure function of the on-board computer

▷ Push operating lever up or down until the tire pressure function of the on-board computer appears.
(The selection field must be **switched off**.)



Pressure info in tire pressure menu

In accordance with physical principles, the air pressure changes as the temperature changes. The tire pressure increases or decreases by around 1.5 psi (0.1 bar) for every 18 °F (10 °C) change in temperature.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring takes this relationship between tire pressure and temperature into account.

▷ Please see the chapter "PRESSURE INCREASE AS THE RESULT OF TEMPERATURE INCREASE" on Page 156.

You can read the tire pressures to be corrected in this display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The tire pressure to be corrected (refill pressure) is indicated on the displayed wheel.
Example: If " –1.5 psi (–0.1 bar)" is displayed, 1.5 psi (0.1 bar) must be added to this tire.

Note

The tire pressure menu can only be called up when the vehicle is stationary.

Calling up the "Info pressure" display

- ▷ Push operating lever forward in order to switch on the selection field.
- ▷ Select "TPM" with the operating lever.
- ▷ Push operating lever forward.
  The display changes to the tire pressure menu.
- ▷ Select "Info pressure" with the operating lever.
- ▷ Push operating lever forward.

Note

After the ignition is switched on, it can take up to approx. 1 minute before all tire pressures are displayed. Dashes ("-.-") appear instead of the tire pressures.

Tire type info in Tire pressure menu

Information about the currently set tires:

- Tire type: Summer tires, winter tires
- Tire size: 17, 18, 19 inch

"Info tires" shows the current tire settings.

Calling up the "Info tires" display

- ▷ Push operating lever forward in order to switch on the selection field.
- ▷ Select "TPM" with the operating lever.
- ▷ Push operating lever forward.
  The display changes to the tire pressure menu.

- ▷ Select "Info tires" with the operating lever.
- ▷ Push operating lever forward.

Tire selection in the "Set" menu

- ▷ Push operating lever forward in order to switch on the selection field.
- ▷ Select "TPM" with the operating lever.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▷ Push operating lever forward.
The display changes to the tire pressure menu.

▷ Select “Set” with the operating lever.

▷ Push the operating lever forward.

▷ Select desired tire type:
summer or winter.

▷ Push operating lever forward.
A display for confirming the selected type of tire appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▷ Select “Continue” and push the operating lever forward.

▷ Select the appropriate tire size (17, 18 or 19 inch) and push operating lever forwards. A display for confirming the selected tire size appears.

Note

This menu is displayed only if the tire pressures are different for the approved tire sizes.

▷ Select “Continue” and push the operating lever forward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

H92-528

The tire selection has only been successfully completed when the message "Process complete" is displayed by the on-board computer.

▷ Select arrow (Back) and push the operating lever forward. The display returns to the tire pressure menu.
The on-board computer additionally displays the message "System learning".

Note

The message "Process aborted" appears if the setting process is interrupted. All entries made up to this point are lost, and the original settings remain in effect.
Only if the message "Process complete" appears after the settings have been made will the Tire Pressure Monitoring re-learn the wheels.

▷ Please see the chapter "SYSTEM LEARNING" on Page 154.

Before fitting tires with sizes which are not stored in the on-board computer, the missing information should be supplemented in the on-board computer.

▷ Please consult your authorized Porsche dealer.

▷ Use only tires approved by Porsche.

The available items in the tire pressure menu depend on the equipment of your vehicle. For this reason it is possible that some of the items shown here are not available on your on-board computer's display.

▷ Make sure that tire pressures correspond to the on-board computer settings. Correct the tire pressure if necessary.

▷ Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES (68 °F/20 °C)" on Page 277.

Tire pressure warnings

The tire pressure warning light on the instrument panel and a corresponding message on the on-board computer warn about loss of pressure in two stages, depending on the amount of pressure loss.

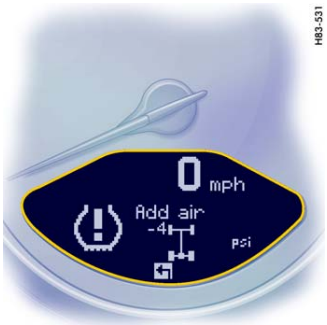
Driving with insufficient tire pressure reduces the road safety of the vehicle and destroys the tire and wheel.

Stage 1 – Add air

The pressure in the tire is too low by 4 to 7 psi (0.3 to 0.5 bar).

▷ The tire pressure warning contains the affected tire with the tire pressure to be added. Correct the tire pressure at the next opportunity.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



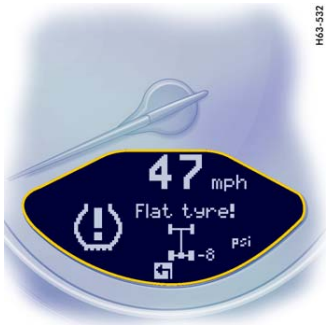
H83-531

This tire pressure warning appears

- for approx. 10 seconds with vehicle stopped when switching off the ignition **or**
- again when switching on the ignition.

With ignition on, the warning can be deactivated.

The tire pressure warning light in the instrument panel goes out only when the tire pressure has been corrected.



H63-532

Stage 2 – Flat tire

At speeds **below** 100 mph (160 km/h):

The pressure in the tire has dropped by **more than 7 psi (0.5 bar)**. This significant pressure loss is a danger to road safety.

At speeds **above** 100 mph (160 km/h):

The pressure in the tire has dropped by **more than 5 psi (0.4 bar)**. This significant pressure loss is a danger to road safety.

▷ When the tire pressure warning appears, stop immediately at a suitable location. Check the indicated tire for signs of damage. If necessary, fill in tire sealant and set the correct tire pressure.

This tire pressure warning also appears when driving and can be acknowledged.
The tire pressure warning light on the instrument panel goes out only when the tire pressure has been corrected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

System learning

The Tire Pressure Monitoring begins to "learn" the wheels after a wheel change, wheel transmitter replacement or update of the tire settings. During this process, the Tire Pressure Monitoring recognizes the tires and their locations.
The on-board computer displayes the message **"TPM is learning, monitoring not act."**.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring requires a certain amount of time to learn the wheels. During this time, the current tire pressures are not available on the on-board-computer:

- The tire pressure warning light remains lit until all wheels have been learned.
- The display of the tire pressure function of the on-board computer shows lines.
- The required pressures for cold tires at 68 °F (20 °C) are indicated in the Info pressure display in the tire pressure menu.

Position and pressure information is displayed as soon as the Tire Pressure Monitoring has assigned the wheels identified as belonging to the vehicle to the correct wheel positions.

The wheel learning process takes place exclusively when the vehicle is being driven (vehicle speed above 25 km/h (16 mph)).

▷ Check the tire pressure for all wheels on the "Info pressure" display.

▷ Correct the tire pressure to the required pressure if necessary.

Changing a wheel and replacing tires

▷ New wheels must be fitted with radio transmitters for the Tire Pressure Monitoring.
Before tires are changed, the battery charge state of the wheel transmitters should be checked at an authorized Porsche dealer.

▷ Switch the ignition off when changing a wheel.

The tire settings on the on-board computer must be updated after changing a wheel.
If the tire settings are not updated, the message "Wheel change? Input new TPM settings!" is displayed on the on-board computer.

▷ Update the on-board computer settings when the vehicle is stationary the next time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning light

Warning!

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPM malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.
The TPM malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale.
When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.
When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.
TPM malfuntions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPM from functioning properly.
Always check the TPM malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPM to continue to function properly.

The warning light in the speedometer lights up:

- When a loss in pressure has been detected.
- When learning newly mounted wheels/wheel sensors, as long as the vehicle's own wheels have not yet been recognized.

In the event of a defect in Tire Pressure Monitoring or a temporary fault, the warning light in the speedometer flashes for approx. one minute and then remains continuously illuminated.

The tire pressure warning light in the instrument panel goes out only when the cause of the fault has been rectified.

Partial monitoring

Monitoring of the other wheels is continued if there is a fault in one or two wheel transmitters.

- The tire pressure warning light lights up.
- The message "TPM partial monitoring" is displayed on the on-board computer.
- No tire pressures are displayed on the on-board computer for wheels with faulty wheel transmitters.

No monitoring

In the event of faults the Tire Pressure Monitoring cannot monitor the tire pressure.
The warning light in the speedometer flashes for approx. one minute and then remains continuously illuminated and a corresponding message appears on the on-board computer.

Monitoring is not active when:

- the Tire Pressure Monitoring is faulty,
- wheel transmitters for the Tire Pressure Monitoring are missing,
- during the learning phase after the tire settings have been updated,
- after a wheel change without updating the tire settings,
- more than four wheel transmitters are detected,
- there is external interference by other radio sources, e.g. wireless headphones,
- tire temperatures are too high.

▷ Please see the chapter "WARNINGS ON THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND THE ON-BOARD COMPUTER" on Page 162.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pressure increase as the result of temperature increase

In accordance with physical principles, the air pressure changes as the temperature changes. The tire pressure increases or decreases by around 1.5 psi (0.1 bar) for every 18 °F (10 °C) change in temperature.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring takes this relationship between tire pressure and temperature into account.

Tire pressure specifications

Information on tire pressure for public roads can be found in this Owner's Manual in the Technical Data chapter or on the tire-pressure plate in the left door aperture.
These values apply to cold tires at 68 °F (20 °C) ambient temperature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OIL
Display and measurement of the engine oil level

Caution!

Risk of engine damage.

- ▷ Regularly check the oil level each time before refueling.
- ▷ Do not allow the oil level to fall below the minimum mark.

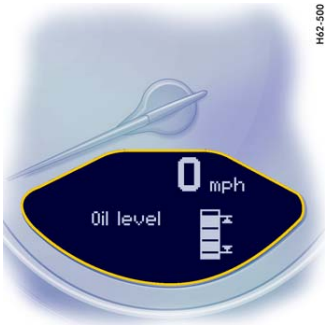
Conditions for measuring the oil level

1. Vehicle stationary.
2. It is important to ensure that the vehicle is **horizontal** for correct oil level measurement to occur.
3. Engine must be at operating temperature (at least 140 °F/60 °C).
4. Engine must be idling.

Initiating oil level measurement

1. Push operating lever forward in order to switch on the selection field.
2. Select “OIL” with the operating lever.
3. Push operating lever forward. Measurement is started.
4. Allow waiting time to elapse.
5. Once the measurement has been completed, you can read off the engine oil level on the segment display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



6. If the segments are filled in up to the top line, the oil level has reached the maximum mark. Under no circumstances add engine oil.

7. If the bottom segment is filled in, the oil level has reached the minimum mark.

   Add engine oil immediately.

8. If the bottom segment flashes, the oil level has dropped to below the minimum mark.

   Add engine oil immediately.

The difference between the minimum and maximum marks on the segment display is approx. 1.3 quarts (1.25 litres).
One segment of the display corresponds to a top-up quantity of approx. 0.42 quarts (0.4 litre).

▷ Add engine oil if necessary.
Switch off ignition before adding engine oil.

▷ Please see the chapter "ENGINE OIL LEVEL" on Page 199.

▷ **Never add more engine oil than required to reach the maximum mark.**

Failure

A failure of the oil level display is indicated by a warning message on the on-board computer.

"Check engine oil level" display

The on-board computer display "Check engine oil level" is an additional measurement that takes place in the background while driving.

The display depends on the distance travelled. This display appears if the oil level has reached the minimum mark or if the oil level is well above the maximum mark.

This message must be acknowledged by measuring the engine oil level manually using the on-board computer.

▷ Please see the chapter "INITIATING OIL LEVEL MEASUREMENT" on Page 157.

If an oil level measurement was initiated manually on the on-board computer and no oil was topped up, the message "Check engine oil level" is displayed again when the vehicle is driven.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

H62-508

H62-535

SET
Basic setting on on-board computer

Switching on selection field "D"

▷ Push operating lever forward.

Changing the basic setting of the on-board computer

▷ Select "SET" with the operating lever.

▷ Push operating lever forward.

▷ Select the desired function with the operating lever:

Reset

– Reset all,
Reset average consumption,
Reset average speed,
Reset trip counter

Units

– Speedometer: km - km/h, miles - mph

– Consumption:
l/100 km, mls/gal (USA), mpg (UK), km/l

– Temperature: °Celsius, °Fahrenheit

– Tire pressure: bar, psi

Display
(Select central line of the on-board computer)

– **Change display**
Audio information (set radio station)
Range on remaining fuel
Empty

– **Telephone Info**
When Telephone information is active, incoming telephone calls are displayed on the on-board computer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Navigation

– Integrated in the BC
(Navigation instructions can be recalled on the on-board computer display)

– When turning off
(Navigation instructions are only shown before changing direction)

Basic setting

– Restore the basic setting of the on-board computer

Language

– Select language version

12/24h mode

Select time mode:

– 12h (small squares on the right side of the time display for AM/PM),

– 24h

Light

USA only:
Switch daytime driving lights on and off.

☐ Daytime driving lights
(daytime driving lights switched off)

■ Daytime driving lights
(daytime driving lights switched on)

▷ Please see the chapter "DAYTIME DRIVING LIGHTS" on Page 78.

▷ Please see the chapter "DAYTIME DRIVING LIGHTS" on Page 80.

General information regarding the on-board computer functions

Range on remaining fuel

The range on remaining fuel is continuously recalculated during the journey based on the fuel level, current consumption and average consumption. The more the fuel level falls, the more spontaneously the display reacts. For this reason, the range on remaining fuel is not displayed if less than 9 miles (15 kilometers).

If the vehicle's inclination changes while driving or refueling, incorrect range information may temporarily be given.

Note

If the tank is nearly empty and you top up with only a small quantity of fuel, an accurate range on remaining fuel is impossible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Average consumption and average speed

The values displayed are based on the distance travelled since the last reset to “zero”.

You can set the starting time for a measurement before or during the trip.
Switching the ignition off does not reset the measurements. It is therefore possible to collect values over long periods.
Disconnecting the car battery will cause these memories to be erased.

Tire pressure

The **Tire pressure** function of the on-board computer displays the tire pressures dependent on temperature in the four wheels. You can watch the tire pressure rise and fall while driving.
The display is only for information.

▷ To correct the tire pressures, always use the displayed values from the “Info pressure” display in the tire pressure menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warnings on the instrument panel and the on-board computer

If a warning message appears, always refer to the corresponding chapters in the Owner's Manual.
Warning messages are issued only if all measurement preconditions are met. Therefore, check all fluid levels regularly – in particular, always check the engine oil level before refuelling.

Instrument panel	On-board computer	Text display on on-board computer	Meaning/measure
		Seat belt	Driver and passengers must fasten their seat belts.
BRAKE		Handbrake	Handbrake is still on.
		Ignition key not removed	
		Replace battery in ignition key	Replace the remote-control battery.
		Ignition lock faulty, please go to workshop	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Ignition lock faulty, visit workshop now	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Relieve steering	Relieve the steering lock by moving the steering wheel to the left or right.
		Steering locked	The steering wheel lock remains engaged. Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Lights on	Low beam/side marker lamps on
		Parking light on	Left/right parking light on

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument panel	On-board computer	Text display on on-board computer	Meaning/measure
		Check left/right dipped beam (low beam) also applies to: direction indicator, high beam, side indicator light, reversing light	The reported light is faulty. Check bulb. Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Daytime driving lights off	Daytime driving lights switch off when the engine is shut off. Switch on lights if necessary.
		Headlight beam adjustment faulty	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Front lid not closed	Close front luggage compartment lid properly.
		Rear lid not closed	Close rear luggage compartment lid properly.
		Rain sensor faulty	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Steering wheel heating ON	Steering wheel heating was switched on.
		Steering wheel heating OFF	Steering wheel heating was switched off.
		Launch control active	
		Drive Off Assistant failure	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Refill washer fluid	
		LIMIT Cannot be accepted with vehicle stopped	The current speed can only be accepted for the acoustic warning signal when the vehicle is in motion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument panel	On-board computer	Text display on on-board computer	Meaning/measure
		LIMIT 30	Selected speed limit (e.g. 30 mph) for the acoustic warning signal has been exceeded. Adjust your speed if necessary.
Fuel gage warning light		Consider remaining range	Refuel at next opportunity.
		Check engine oil level	Start engine oil level measurement in the on-board computer.
		Engine oil pressure too low	Stop immediately at a suitable place, measure oil level with the on-board computer and, if necessary, add engine oil.
Warning light Temperature gage		Engine temperature too high	Switch engine off and let it cool. Check coolant level and, if necessary, add coolant.
Temperature gage warning light flashes		Check coolant level	Switch engine off and let it cool. Check coolant level and, if necessary, add coolant.
		Engine diagnostics – workshop	Stop immediately at a suitale place and check tank cap for proper fastening. If the tank cap was fastened correctly, consult your authorized Porsche dealer.
		Reduced engine power	Consult your authorized Porsche dealer.
Temperature gage warning light flashes		Failure of engine compartment blower	Consult your authorized Porsche dealer.
		Warning Battery/generator	Stop at a safe place and switch the engine off. Do not continue driving. Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument panel	On-board computer	Text display on on-board computer	Meaning/measure
		Oil pressure gage faulty	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Oil level display faulty	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Oil temperature gage faulty	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Oil temperature too high	Switch engine off and let it cool. Check oil level and, if necessary, add oil. Please observe the chapter “OIL DISPLAY AND MEASUREMENT OF THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL“.
		Indicator faulty	Coolant indicator failed. Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
BRAKE		Brake pad wear	Have the brake pads changed immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer.
BRAKE		Warning – Brake fluid level	Stop immediately in a suitable place. Do not continue driving. Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
BRAKE		Warning – Brake circuit division	Stop immediately in a suitable place. Do not continue driving. Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
ABS		ABS failure	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		PSM off	Porsche Stability Management has been switched off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument panel	On-board computer	Text display on on-board computer	Meaning/measure
		PSM on	Porsche Stability Management has been switched on.
		PSM failure	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		PSM initialisation	Please observe the chapter "PUTTING VEHICLE INTO OPERATION".
		PASM Normal/Sport	Indicator for selected PASM mode
		PASM failure	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		PASM indicator faulty	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Sport mode failure	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Airbag system fault	Airbag is faulty. Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Check passenger's seat setting	Weight sensing is impaired on the front passenger's seat (Advanced Airbag). Correct the seating position, set the backrest upright, do not support weight on the armrests, or lift on the handles.
		Failure spoiler control	Driving stability is impaired. Adjust your driving style. Reduce speed. Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
Display of selector lever position flashes		Selector lever is not engaged	Porsche Doppelkupplung: Selector lever can be between two positions. Engage the selector lever correctly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument panel	On-board computer	Text display on on-board computer	Meaning/measure
		Move selector lever to P	Porsche Doppelkupplung: Move selector lever to position P before withdrawing key from ignition lock.
		Apply brake	Porsche Doppelkupplung: Apply the brake when starting.
		Depress clutch pedal	Manual transmission: Depress clutch pedal when starting.
		Move selector lever to position P or N	Porsche Doppelkupplung: The vehicle can be started only in the selector lever position P or N.
		Text display in white: Transmission emergency run	Restricted gearshift comfort, failure of reverse gear. Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Text display in red: Transmission emergency run	No selector lever position is displayed on the instrument cluster. Vehicle can be driven only until it comes to a stop. It is not possible to continue driving. Immediately stop the vehicle in a suitable place. Have the vehicle towed to an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Transmission temperature too high	Jerking can be felt when driving off, and the engine power may be restricted. Do not hold the vehicle with the accelerator on a hill, for example. Hold the vehicle with the brake. Reduce engine load. If possible, stop the vehicle in a suitable place. Allow the engine to run in selector lever position **P** or **N** until the warning disappears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument panel	On-board computer	Text display on on-board computer	Meaning/measure
		System fault Go to workshop	Several systems may have failed. Adjust your driving style. Reduce speed. Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Failure of fuel level indicator Workshop	Have the fault remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Service in mls/days	Service indicator Bring the vehicle in for service no later than after the distance/time shown has elapsed. Please observe the additional information in the "Maintenance" booklet.
		Service now	Service indicator Have your vehicle serviced at an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Failure Convertible-top control	Activate convertible top in opposite direction. If there is a failure: Consult an authorized Porsche dealer.
		Convertible top not in limit position	Fully open or close convertible top
		Opening convertible top	Message goes out in final position
		Closing convertible top	Message goes out in final position
		Rear lid not closed	The convertible top cannot be operated with the rear lid open.
		Flat tyre!	Tire Pressure Monitoring has detected a serious pressure loss. Stop at a suitable place and check tires for damage. Fill in tire sealant if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument panel	On-board computer	Text display on on-board computer	Meaning/measure
		Add air	The Tire Pressure Monitoring has detected a gradual pressure loss. Correct tire pressure at the next opportunity.
		TPM is learning monitoring not act.	The Tire Pressure Monitoring is learning the wheels on the vehicle. The Tire Pressure Monitoring is searching for the tires and their position. During this period the current pressure specifications are not available on the on-board computer.
		TPM inactive	The Tire Pressure Monitoring is faulty. Consult an authorized Porsche dealer.
		TPM partial monitoring	1 or 2 wheel transmitters are faulty. The tyre pressures of these wheels are not monitored. The other wheels are still monitored. Consult an authorized Porsche dealer.
		TPM inactive Brief disturbance TPM inactive Too many wheel transmitters	The Tire Pressure Monitoring is temporarily deactivated by excessive tire temperatures (approx. 248 °F (120 °C)) or external interference (e.g. from other wheel transmitters inside the car). Once the source of the interference is removed, the system is automatically reactivated.
		Wheel change? Input new TPM settings!	Update the settings in the TPM menu of the on-board computer at the next opportunity. Wrong entries will affect the correct pressure information in the menu. The safety of your vehicle is at risk.
		TPM Indicator faulty	The display of the Tire Pressure Monitoring is faulty. Consult an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Acknowledging warning messages

Warning messages can be deleted from the on-board computer display.

▷ Push the on-board computer operating lever forward.

You can recall erased warning messages in the “INFO” menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifting Gears

Manual Transmission, Clutch 172
Drive-Off Assistant 173
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) 174

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Transmission, Clutch

The positions of the gears are shown on the shift diagram on the gearshift lever.

Warning!

Risk of accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Do not obstruct the pedal travel with floor mats or other objects.
Nonskid floor mats of the correct size are available at your authorized Porsche dealer.

To avoid damage to the clutch and transmission:

▷ Always depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gears. Make sure that the gearshift lever is completely engaged.

▷ Only shift into reverse when the car has come to a complete stop.

▷ When shifting gears, always ensure that the clutch pedal is fully depressed and the gear has fully engaged.

▷ Select reverse only when vehicle is stationary. Reverse gear can be engaged after shifting the gearshift lever as far as possible to the left.

▷ Select an appropriately low gear on upward and downward slopes.
This will ensure optimum use of engine power and engine braking.

When reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on, the backup lights are illuminated.

Permitted engine speed

▷ You should change into a higher gear before the needle reaches the red mark on the tachometer, or ease off the accelerator.

If the red zone is reached during acceleration, fuel feed is interrupted.

Caution!

Risk of engine damage (overrevving) when shifting down to a lower gear.

▷ Take care not to exceed the maximum permitted engine speed when shifting down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Drive-Off Assistant

The Drive-Off Assistant assists the driver when moving off on hills.
The vehicle must have sufficient road contact.

The Drive-Off Assistant is available on gradients as from around 5%.

Danger!

Risk of accident.
Assistance by the Drive-Off Assistant is not guaranteed when moving off on a slippery surface (e.g. on icy or loose surfaces). In this case, the vehicle could slip.
The limits dictated by the laws of physics cannot be overcome, even with the Drive-Off Assistant. The responsibility for moving off on upward slopes is still the driver's, despite the Drive-Off Assistant.

▷ Always adjust your driving style to the driving conditions and vehicle load, use the brake pedal if necessary.

Risk of accident.
If the Drive-Off Assistant is not functioning, the driver cannot be assisted when moving off on hills.

▷ Hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Driving off with the Drive-Off Assistant (vehicles with manual transmission)

1. Hold the vehicle securely on the slope with the brake pedal.
   The engine must be running.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
3. Engage a gear corresponding to the direction of travel up the slope (1st gear or reverse gear).
4. Fully release the parking brake.
5. While keeping the clutch pedal depressed, release the brake pedal.
   The vehicle is held on the slope for a short time in order to allow driving off directly after the brake is released.
6. Move off as usual.

Note on operation

The Drive-Off Assistant is not active:

– If the clutch is not depressed.
– If the vehicle is not stationary.
– If the engine is not running.
– On gradients of less than 5%.
– If the pressure on the brake pedal is too low.

Driving off with the Drive-Off Assistant (vehicles with PDK transmission)

1. Hold the vehicle securely on the slope with the brake pedal.
   The engine must be running.
2. Select a gear corresponding to the direction of travel up the slope (selector lever position **D** or **R**).
3. Fully release the parking brake.
4. Release the brake pedal.
   The vehicle is held on the slope for a short time in order to allow driving off directly after the brake is released.
5. Move off as usual.

Note on operation

The Drive-Off Assistant is not active:

– In the event of shift to neutral.
– If the vehicle is not stationary.
– If the engine is not running.
– On gradients of less than 5%.
– If the pressure on the brake pedal is too low.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)

The Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) is a seven-speed transmission with an “automatic” and a “manual” selection mode.

In **automatic selection mode** (selector lever position **D**), gear changing is automatic.
You can change temporarily from automatic to manual mode using the shift buttons on the steering wheel.

In **manual selection mode** (selector lever position **M**), you change gear using the shift buttons on the steering wheel or with the PDK selector lever.

You can change between selector lever position **D** and **M** as you wish while driving.

Note

▷ Take care not to operate the shift buttons on the steering wheel inadvertently in either automatic or manual mode, thereby triggering undesired gear changes.

Changing the selector lever position

The selector lever is locked when the ignition is switched off.

When the ignition is switched on, the selector lever can be moved from position **P** and **N** only when the release button is pressed, and when the brake pedal is pressed.

Release button

The release button (**arrow**) in the selector lever prevents the gear from being changed unintentionally.
The release button must be pressed when shifting to position **R** or **P**.

Starting

The engine can be started only if the brake pedal is depressed and the selector lever is in position **P** or **N**.

Driving off

▷ Only select the desired position for driving off (**D**, **M** or **R**) when the engine is idling and the brake pedal is depressed.

▷ Since the vehicle creeps when in gear, do not release the brake until you want to move off.

▷ After selecting a gear, do not accelerate until you can feel that the gear is engaged.

Driving off on hills

The Drive-Off Assistant assists the driver when moving off on hills. The vehicle is held on the slope for a short time during the change from the brake pedal to the accelerator in order to allow driving off directly after the brake is released.

▷ Please see the chapter “DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT” on Page 173.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Indicator for selector lever position and engaged gear

When the engine is running, the selector lever position and engaged gear are indicated.

If the selector lever is between two positions

– Effects:
  The corresponding selector-lever position in the instrument panel flashes and the warning "Actuate brake" or "Selector lever not engaged" appears on the on-board computer.

▷ Action required:
  Operate the footbrake and engage the selector lever properly.

If the selector lever is inadvertently (due to a defect or incorrect operation) moved out of P or N into gear without pressing the brake, this gear will start to "flash" and no power transmission is built up. To drive off, press the brake and move the selector lever from P or N into the required gear again.

Selector-lever position R or D is flashing in the instrument cluster

▷ Effects:
  There is no power transmission.
  The selector lever was engaged without pressing the footbrake or only the restricted driving programme is available when the "Transmission emergency run" message is displayed.

  Action required:
  Press the footbrake and engage the required selector-lever position again by moving the selector lever from P or N.
  If reverse gear fails:
  Please see the chapter "REDUCED DRIVING PROGRAM" on Page 180.

If there is a fault in the transmission:

– The warning "Transmission emergency run" in white or red lettering or the warning "Transmission temperature too high" is displayed on the on-board computer.
  Please see the chapter "REDUCED DRIVING PROGRAM" on Page 180.

▷ Have the fault repaired immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selector lever positions

P – Parking lock

▷ Engage parking lock only when vehicle is stationary.
If selector-lever position P is flashing in the instrument cluster, the parking brake is not engaged. The vehicle can roll away.
Engage selector-lever position P again by moving the selector lever out of R.

▷ Engage parking lock **after** applying the handbrake and release it **before** releasing the handbrake.

The **ignition key** can be withdrawn only in selector lever position **P**.

R – Reverse gear

▷ Select only if car is stationary and the brake is applied.

N – Neutral

Selector lever position **N** must be selected for towing or in car washes, for example.

▷ Only select the desired position for driving off (**D**, **M** or **R**) when the engine is idling and the brake pedal is depressed.

D - Automatic selection mode

Select position **D** for "normal" driving. The gears are shifted automatically according to the accelerator position and speed.

Depending on the way the vehicle is driven (economical, comfortable or sporty driving style) and on the resistance (e.g. uphill), the gear-changing points are shifted towards higher or lower engine-speed ranges.
The accelerator position, driving speed, engine speed, longitudinal and lateral acceleration and the road profile all have an influence on the gear-changing characteristic.

Unwanted upward shifts, e.g. before bends, are prevented by swiftly releasing the accelerator pedal.

Depending on lateral acceleration, upward changes on bends are not made until the engine-speed limit is reached.

Under braking, and depending on the amount of deceleration, the PDK transmission changes down earlier.
For subsequent cornering, the right gear is engaged when pressure is applied to the brakes before the bend. The bend is taken in the right gear, and when you accelerate out of the bend you do not have to change down.

With a sporty driving style, downshifts are already initiated when the brake pedal is touched lightly. This further enhances a dynamic driving style.
The PDK transmission temporarily changes to the sportiest gear-changing map, i.e. to the highest possible gear-changing points, if the accelerator pedal is pressed quickly. The transmission accordingly shifts down immediately by one or two gears (temporary change-down).

The transmission no longer selects 7th gear at high driving speeds.

Sport mode
("Sport" and "Sport Plus" modes)

"Sport" mode activated:
The PDK transmission switches to a sporty gear-changing map and shortens the gear shifting times.
A sporty driving style is recognised more quickly and the gear-changing speeds are adapted to driving performance.

Deceleration downshifts are commenced earlier. Downshifts are already carried out in the case of slight decelerations, even at higher engine speeds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

“Sport Plus” mode activated:
In “Sport Plus” mode, the PDK transmission changes to a shift program designed for driving on race circuits. 7th gear is not selected.
The gear-changing performance is enhanced significantly again compared with “Sport” mode.

▷ Please see the chapter “SPORT MODE” on Page 61.

Driving with Launch Control

Driving with Launch Control allows you to achieve maximum acceleration from a standing start. It is intended to provide you with a unique enjoyment of your vehicle under controlled circumstances and is not intended to be used in any location where it could be a nuisance to other persons.

⚠ Warning!

There is a risk of endangering other road users if you use this Control in an improper location or in a situation where other persons might need to take evasive action due to the rapid acceleration that this technology permits.

▷ Launch Control is designed to be used in a controlled environment on closed circuit driving courses where no vehicle cross traffic or pedestrian traffic is present.

▷ Use Launch Control only if conditions permit it to be applied in a safe manner.

▷ Do not use Launch Control if there is a possibility it could endanger other persons. Such a possibility exists if you cannot see that you have a clear road with no possibility of cross traffic in your intended direction of driving.

⚠ Caution!

Stress on components increases dramatically when starting with maximum acceleration in comparison with normal driving off. **Use of Launch Control will inevitably reduce the life of the engaged engine and transmission components.**

Preconditions:

– Launch Control should only be used when the engine has reached operating temperature.

– “Sport Plus” mode must be switched on (light-emitting diode in button is on and “SPORT PLUS” is displayed on the on-board computer).

1. Press the brake with your left foot.
2. Quickly press down the accelerator fully (kickdown activated) and hold.
   The engine speed will flatten out at around 6500 rpm.
   “Launch Control active” is displayed on the on-board computer.
3. Release the brake within a few seconds.

   Remaining stationary for a long time with “Launch Control active” can lead to overloading of the transmission.
   In order to protect the transmission, the engine power is then reduced and the “Launch Control active” process is cancelled.

Shifting gears on the steering wheel

With the shift buttons on the steering wheel, you can change temporarily from automatic selection mode **D** to manual mode **M**.

For example:

– Shifting down before bends and on entering built-up areas.

– Shifting down on downward slopes (engine braking).

– Shifting down for brief spurts of acceleration.

Manual selection mode remains engaged:

– for cornering (depending on the lateral acceleration) and overrunning,

– when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. at a junction).

The system leaves manual selection mode:

– automatically after approx. 8 seconds (unless cornering or overrunning),

– after driving off.

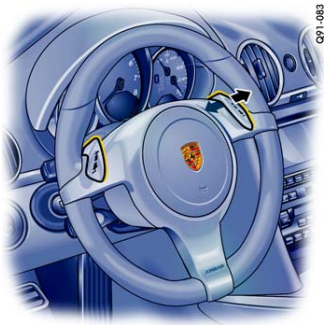
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Kickdown

The kickdown function is active in selector lever positions **D** and **M**.

▷ For optimum acceleration, e.g. when overtaking, depress the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle point (kickdown).

The transmission shifts down depending on the speed of travel and engine speed.
Upward shifts occur at the highest possible engine speeds.



M – Manual selection mode

The currently selected gear is retained when you change from **D** to **M**.

If you change from **M** to **D**, the gear-changing map suitable for your current driving style is selected and the appropriate gear is selected.

The selector lever and the two shift buttons in the top steering wheel spokes allow you to comfortably and reliably select the seven forward gears.

Shifting up +

▷ Press the PDK selector lever or shift button on the steering wheel forward.

Shifting down –

▷ Pull the PDK selector lever or shift button on the steering wheel back.

You can shift up or down by the corresponding number of gears by quickly pressing or pulling the shift buttons or selector lever several times in succession.

The transmission can be shifted up or down by several gears in succession by continuously operating the selector lever or shift buttons.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Depending on driving speed and engine speed, you can shift up or down at any time.

Gear changes which would exceed the upper or lower engine speed limit are not executed by the controller.

There is no automatic upshift at the upper engine speed limit in selector lever position **M**. Upshift suppression can be cancelled by kickdown operation. If, for example, the engine speed limit is reached during overtaking and the automatic upshift does not occur, the transmission in this case shifts up as a result of kickdown operation.

▷ Select an appropriately low gear on upward and downward slopes.
This will ensure optimum use of engine power and engine braking.

In order to shift up automatically at the upper engine speed limit:

▷ Depress the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle point (kickdown).

Failure of the selector lever display on the instrument cluster

The warning "Transmission emergency run" is displayed in red on the on-board computer.

– Effect:
No selector lever position is displayed on the instrument cluster.
Vehicle can be driven only until it comes to a stop.
Remedy:
It is not possible to continue driving. Immediately stop the vehicle in a suitable place. Have the vehicle towed to an authorized Porsche dealer.
Please see the chapter "TOWING" on Page 269.

Stopping

▷ For a brief stop (e.g. at a traffic light), leave the selector lever in drive position and hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.

▷ Do not hold the car on a slope using the accelerator. Use the brake pedal or the handbrake instead.

▷ Before leaving the vehicle, always apply the handbrake and move the selector lever to position **P**.

Parking

▷ Go easy on the accelerator!

▷ When parking or manoeuvring in a small space, control the speed by careful use of the footbrake.

Driving in winter

In wintry road conditions it is advisable to take steep inclines in manual mode. This prevents gear changes occurring that could cause wheelspin.

Tow-starting, towing

▷ Please see the chapter "TOWING" on Page 269.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reduced driving program

If there is a fault in the transmission

– Depending on priority, the warning “Transmission emergency run” in white or red lettering or the warning “Transmission temperature too high” is displayed on the on-board computer.

Warning “Transmission emergency run” **white**

– Effects:
  Restricted gearshift comfort,
  Reverse gear may not function.

  Remedy:
  Have the fault repaired immediately at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Warning “Transmission emergency run” **red**

– Effect:
  Vehicle can be driven only until it comes to a stop.
  Remedy:
  It is not possible to continue driving. Immediately stop the vehicle in a suitable place. Have the vehicle towed to an authorized Porsche dealer.

Warning “Transmission temperature too high”

– Effects:
  “Warning jerks” can be felt when driving off and the engine power may be restricted.
  Remedy:
  Do not hold the vehicle with the accelerator on a hill, for example. Hold the vehicle with the brake. Reduce engine load. If possible, stop the vehicle in a suitable place. Allow the engine to run in selector lever position **P** or **N** until the warning disappears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mobile Roofs

Convertible Top 182
Windstop 189
Hardtop 190

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Convertible Top

Brief operating instructions can be found on the back side of the driver's sun visor.

▷ Please see the chapter "CAR CARE INSTRUCTIONS" on Page 213.

Warning!

When opening or closing the convertible top, serious personal injury may occur if a person's body parts are near or in the way of the convertible top mechanism's moving parts.

▷ Make absolutely sure that nobody can be injured by the convertible-top mechanism or the convertible-top compartment lid.

Do not operate convertible top:

– At temperatures below 32 °F/0 °C.

– When one side of the car is on a curb, a hoist or a jack.

– When items of luggage or other objects hinder the convertible top movement.

▷ Drive only with the convertible top fully open or closed (end positions).

▷ Items of luggage or objects on the luggage tray above the engine compartment lid must be put in the storage box or be secured to prevent their sliding out. These items must not be in abrasive contact with the convertible top or rear window. Keep shutters of the storage box closed while driving.

▷ Avoid frequent operation of the convertible top with the engine off; the vehicle battery would be unintentionally discharged rapidly.

▷ When opening or closing the convertible top, ensure there is sufficient clearance above the convertible top (e.g. in the garage).

▷ To prevent damp stains and abrasions, only open the convertible top in a dry, clean state.

▷ Park your car in the shade whenever possible, as the fabric, rubber material and color can be harmed by long exposure to sunlight.

▷ The convertible top may only be actuated during driving on even surfaces.

▷ The convertible top must not be used with strong counter wind (over approx. 50 mph/ 80 km/h).

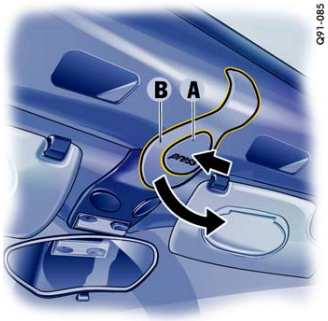
Conditions for operating the convertible top

– The ignition must be switched on (engine running or off).

– Maximum speed 30 mph (50 km/h)
The opening/closing process of the convertible top will be interrupted if the maximum speed is exceeded.

▷ Reduce speed.
Press button again.
The opening/closing process is ended.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Opening convertible top

Releasing the latching lever

▷ Press on the release plate **A**.
Latching lever **B** pops into engaging position.

Releasing convertible top

⚠ **Caution!**

Risk of damage by the locking hooks on the roof frame when the latching lever is not engaged correctly.

▷ Make sure that the latching lever is felt to engage when opening.

▷ Swivel latching lever **B** to the rear until it is felt to engage.

Opening the convertible top with the button

⚠ **Warning!**

Risk of injury.

▷ When opening the convertible top, make sure that nobody can be injured by the convertible-top mechanism or the convertible-top compartment lid.

▷ In order to abort convertible top operation in the event of danger:
up to 6 mph (10 km/h), release the button immediately,
over 6 mph (10 km/h), activate the button briefly.

▷ **Up to 6 mph (10 km/h):**
Pull the button and hold without interruption until the convertible top is in the final position and the message on the on-board computer goes out.
In case of danger, release the button.
Convertible top operation stops.

▷ **From 6 mph (10 km/h) to 30 mph (50 km/h):**
Pull button briefly, the convertible top opens automatically. The message in on-board computer goes out.
In case of danger, pull the button back again, the convertible top operation stops.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Closing the convertible top

Warning!

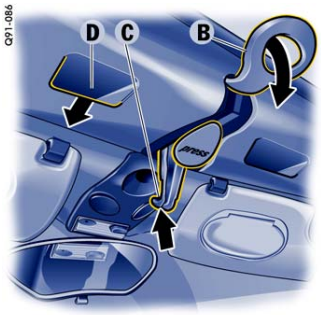
Danger of injury and damage.

- When closing the convertible top, make sure that nobody can be injured by the convertible-top mechanism or the convertible-top compartment lid.
- In order to abort convertible top operation in the event of danger:
  up to 6 mph (10 km/h), release the button immediately,
  over 6 mph (10 km/h), activate the button briefly.
- Keep the lids of the make-up mirrors in the sun visors closed when closing the convertible top.
- Lock the convertible top with the latching lever after automatic closing.

Closing convertible top with the button

- **Up to 6 mph (10 km/h):**
  Pull the button and hold without interruption until the convertible top is in the final position and the message on the on-board computer goes out.
  In case of danger, release the button.
  Convertible top operation stops.
- **From 6 mph (10 km/h) to 30 mph (50 km/h):**
  Pull the button briefly, the convertible top closes automatically. The message in on-board computer goes out.
  In case of danger, push the button forward again, the convertible top operation stops.
- Lock convertible top with the latching lever.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Locking the convertible top

▷ Swivel latching lever **B** to the front until it is felt to engage.
The locking hook **C** must engage in the receptacle on the windshield frame.

Note

If the convertible top has been opened for a longer period, it could be necessary to assist the locking hook **C** engage.

▷ With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the button for convertible top operation and pull the convertible top to the windshield using the handle recess **D**.

Emergency operation

▷ Before performing emergency operation, please check:
Was the ignition switched on and the handbrake applied?
Are the electrical fuses defective?
Please see the chapter "ELECTRICAL SYSTEM" on Page 245.

⚠ Warning!

There is a danger of injury and risk of damage during emergency operation.
There is a danger of crushing or pinching body parts at all moveable convertible top parts which could cause serious personal injury.

▷ Take great care when performing emergency operation.

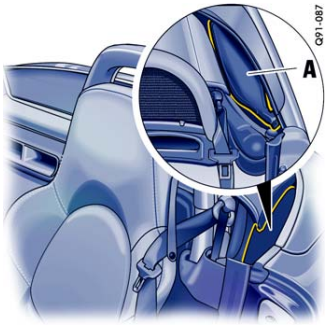
▷ Do not operate the convertible top during and after emergency operation.

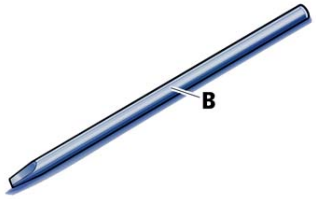
▷ Lever off joint rods only with the greatest care.

▷ If the convertible top is not in the rearward final position, the convertible-top compartment lid or the convertible top could fall down when the joint rods are levered off.
For this reason, hold convertible top or convertible-top compartment lid firmly before levering off the second joint rod.

▷ During emergency operation, ensure that the paint is not damaged.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine





I51-056

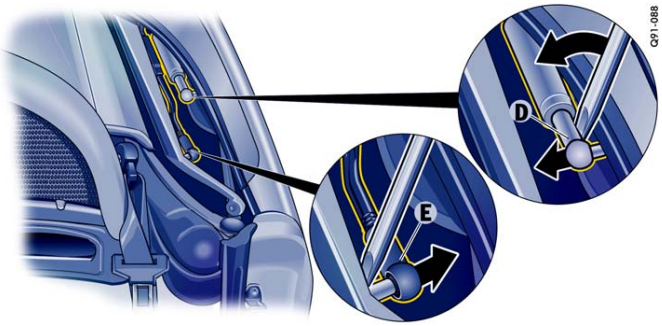
1. Remove the ignition key so that the convertible top is not operated unintentionally.
2. On both sides of the car, unclip the black rod cover **A** and pull it up and out.
3. Take lever **B** out of the tool kit.

Warning!

Danger of crushing or pinching.

- ▷ Lever off joint rods only with the greatest care.
- ▷ If the convertible top is not in the rearward final position, the convertible-top compartment lid or the convertible top could fall down when the joint rods are levered off.
  For this reason, hold convertible top or convertible-top compartment lid firmly before levering off the second joint rod.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Example: *Convertible top in rearward final position*
D - *Joint rod for convertible-top compartment cover (black ball head fastening)*
E - *Joint rod for convertible top (white ball head fastening)*

The position and accessibility of the joint rods change depending on the position of the convertible top. It can be helpful to fold up the rear part of the convertible top.

4. Lever joint rod **D** (black fastening) off the ball head with blade of lever **B**.
   As the connection is under spring tension, a corresponding amount of force is required to lever off the ball head, creating danger of crushing and pinching.
5. When levering off joint rod **D** on the other side of the vehicle, the convertible-top compartment cover must be held so that it does not fall down in an uncontrolled manner to protect against injury from a fallen cover.
6. Grasp convertible-top compartment cover in the center and set up completely (**arrow**).
7. Lever joint rod **E** (white fastening) off the ball head with blade of lever **B**.
   A corresponding amount of force is required to lever off the ball head, creating danger of crushing and pinching.
8. When levering off joint rod **E** on the other side of the vehicle, the convertible top must be held so that it does not fall down in an uncontrolled manner to protect against injury from a fallen cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9. Lift convertible top with both hands (**arrow**) and close.
10. Lock convertible top.
11. Carefully lower convertible-top compartment cover.

Caution!

Danger of damage at the convertible top.

- After emergency operation, do not operate the convertible top with the rocker switch.
- Drive slowly to an authorized Porsche dealer in order to have the fault remedied.

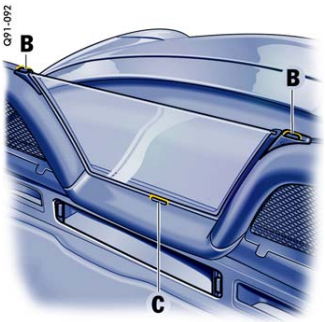
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windstop

▷ Make sure that all windstop parts are fastened securely, especially when driving with the convertible top open.

Note

When the convertible top is closed, it is a good idea to remove the center section of the windstop to permit good ventilation of the interior or for demisting the rear window.
This is particularly the case in cold, wet weather.



Removing outer windstop parts

▷ Press windstop parts to the rear and up out of the roll-over bar and take it out.

Installing outer windstop parts

▷ First insert the windstop parts in the roll-over bar from the rear, then push it up into the bar.

▷ Make sure that the three plastic tongues **A** fully engage in the roll-over bar.

Removing central section of windstop parts

▷ Press release buttons **B** and take out the windstop toward the rear.

Installing center section of windstop

▷ First insert the windstop in receiver **C** from the rear, then, one after the other, press forward until both upper mounts **B** engage audibly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

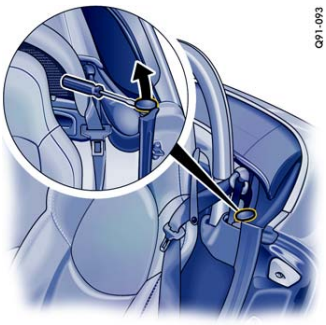
Hardtop

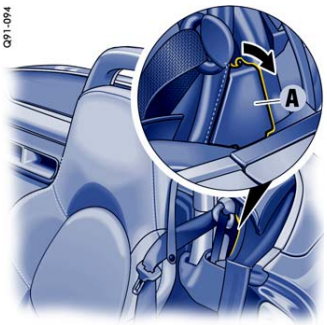
Since the convertible top stays open for a long time, it must be absolutely dry and clean before being opened.
This prevents damp stains and abrasion damage.

Your autorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you about correct hardtop storage.

Note

The inserts for locking of the pivot locks are not installed on vehicles delivered without a hardtop. It is essential to have the necessary parts retrofitted by an authorized Porsche dealer before a hardtop is fitted for the first time.





Fitting the hardtop

1. Open doors and convertible top.
2. Carefully remove both plastic covers (**arrow**) out of the pivot locks, using a screwdriver. Store plastic covers.

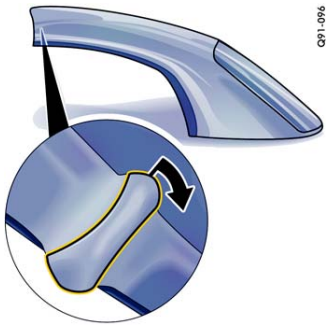
Note

These plastic covers are included with vehicles that are factory-equipped with a hardtop.

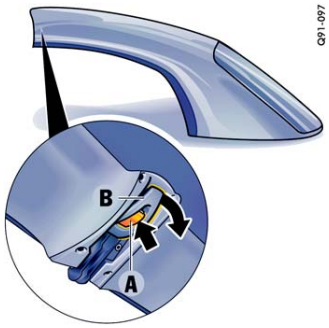
3. Pull off cover **A** on the roll-over bar.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Remove the connector of the convertible top heated rear window and insert into the rear empty socket.

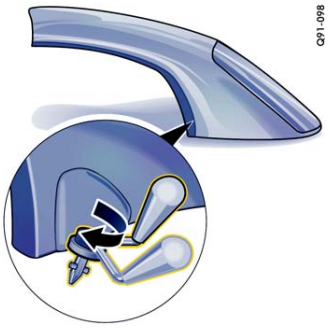


5. Remove cover from front locking lever (**arrow**).

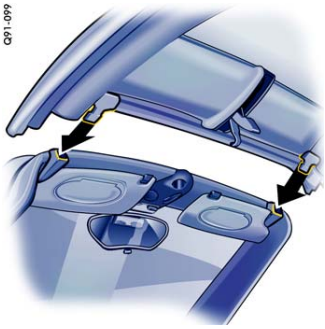


6. Press red locking button of the front locking lever (arrow **A**).
   Open latch completely (arrow **B**).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



7. Put both pivot locks in the opening position on the hardtop.
   The handles must point inwards.

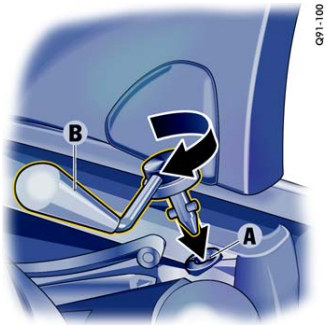


8. With one person on each side, grasp hardtop and **carefully** lift over the car.
9. Insert hardtop front into the sockets on the windshield frame.

Warning!

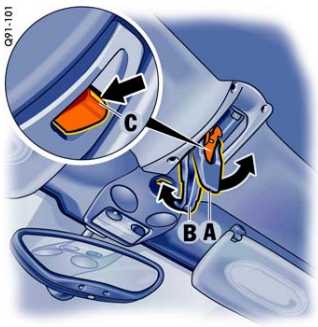
Danger of pinching fingers or hands.

▷ Evenly lower the hardtop at both sides.



10. Lower hardtop at rear.
    The pivot locks must be completely sunken into the locks (arrow **A**).
    If necessary, move latching lever slightly.
11. Swing both latching levers **B** to the rear until they can be felt to engage.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



12. Swing locking lever of front latch to the rear (arrow **A**).
    The locking hook must engage in the windshield frame (arrow **B**).
    When the hardtop is correctly latched, the white marking stripe on the red locking button (arrow **C**) must be visible.

Caution!

Risk of damage due to inadvertent operation of the convertible top when the hardtop is fitted.

▷ Make sure that front locking lever **A** is always correctly locked.
This disables the convertible-top drive.

13. Fit cover on the front locking lever.

14. Insert the plug of the hardtop heated rear window into the socket.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the hardtop

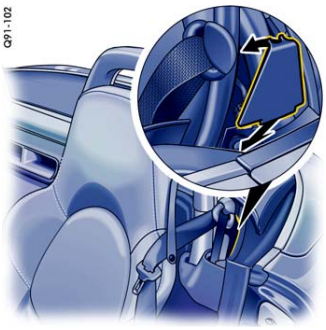
1. Make sure that the hardtop is placed on a clean, soft surface.
2. Open doors.
3. Remove cover from the front locking lever.
4. Open front latch.
5. Open rear pivot locks (swivel inwards).
   Unplug plug of the hardtop heated rear window.
6. With one person on each side, grasp the hardtop.
   Lift hardtop at rear and pull out of the sockets on the windshield frame at front.

Warning!

Danger of pinching fingers or hands.

▷ Evenly lift the hardtop at both sides.

7. Carefully lift the hardtop up and off the vehicle to the rear.
8. Close front hardtop latch.
   Fit cover on the front latch.
9. Close pivot locks on the vehicle with the plastic covers.
10. Remove the connector of the convertible top heated rear window from the empty socket and insert into the socket.



11. Swivel the sash guide of the seat belt forward.
    Insert the lower retaining lugs of the cover from above and clip in the upper retaining lugs on the bar.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance, Car Care

Exercise Extreme Caution when Working
on your Vehicle 196
Coolant Level 197
Engine Oil 199
Engine Oil Level 199
Engine Oil Recommendation 200
Brake Fluid Level 202
Fuel Economy 204
Operating your Porsche in other Countries .. 204
Fuel Recommendations 206
Portable Fuel Containers 207
Fuel Evaporation Control 207
Emission Control System 208
How Emission Control Works 209
Washer Fluid 210
Power Steering 211
Air Filter 211
Combination Filter 211
Fluids/Oils for Manual Transmission
and Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) 211
Wiper Blades 212
Car Care Instructions 213

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Exercise Extreme Caution when Working on your Vehicle

Danger!

Ignoring the following instructions may cause serious personal injury or death.

- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. If you are not fully familiar with proper repair procedures, do not attempt the adjustments described on the following pages.
  This caution also applies to the entire vehicle.
- Only work on your vehicle outdoors or in a well ventilated area.
- Ensure that there are no open flames in the area of your vehicle at any time when fuel fumes might be present. Be especially cautious of such devices such as hot water heaters which ignite a flame intermittently.
- Before working on any part in the engine compartment, turn the engine off and let it cool down sufficiently. Hot engine compartment components can burn skin on contact.
- Be alert and cautious around engine at all times while the engine is running.
  If work has to be performed with the engine running, always set the parking brake, and make sure the shift lever is in neutral position or the PDK selector lever in position **P** or **N**.
- In particular, be very careful to ensure that items of clothing (ties, shirt, sleeves etc.), jewelry, long hair, hand or fingers cannot get caught in the engine-compartment blower, fan, belts or other moving parts.
  The radiator and radiator fans are in the front of the car.
  The engine-compartment blower is mounted in the engine-compartment.
  The fans can start or continue running as a function of temperature, even with the engine switched off.
  Carry out work in these areas only with the engine off, the ignition switched off, and exercise extreme caution.
- Your Porsche is equipped with an electronic ignition system. When the ignition is on, high voltage is present in all wires connected with the ignition system; therefore, exercise extreme caution when working on any part of the engine while the ignition is on or the engine is running.
- Always support your car with safety stands if it is necessary to work under the car.
- When working under the car without safety stands but with the wheels on the ground, make sure the car is on level ground, the wheels are blocked, and that the engine cannot be started.
  Remove the ignition key.
- Do not smoke or allow an open flame around the battery or fuel.
  Keep a fire extinguisher in close reach.
- Incomplete or improper servicing may cause problems in the operation of the car. If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Porsche dealer.
  Improper maintenance during the warranty period may affect your Porsche warranty coverage.
- Supplies of fluids, e.g. engine oil, brake fluid or coolant, are hazardous to your health.
  Keep these fluids out of children's reach and dispose of them in accordance with the appropriate regulations.
- Some countries require additional tools and special spare parts to be carried in your vehicle.
  Please make enquiries before driving abroad.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Coolant Level

▷ Please see the chapter "EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING ON YOUR VEHICLE" on Page 196.

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a permanent coolant.
It provides year-round protection from corrosion and freezing down to –31 °F/–35 °C.

▷ Only use antifreeze authorized by Porsche.

Checking coolant level

The expansion tank with its filler orifice is located in the rear luggage compartment under the service flap.

▷ Check the coolant level regularly.

When the engine is cold and the car is level the fluid level must lie between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

Topping off coolant

⚠ Warning!

Danger of serious personal injury or death from scalding. Coolant is hazardous to your health, and may be fatal if swallowed.

▷ Do not open the cap of the expansion tank while the engine is hot.

▷ Allow the engine to cool down before opening the cap and protect your hands, arms and face from any possible escape of hot coolant.

▷ Keep coolant out of children's reach.

▷ Also, keep coolant away from your pets. They can be attracted to it should there be a spill, or to used coolant left in an open container. Coolant can be deadly to pets if consumed.

Risk of damage from overflowing coolant.

▷ Take care while topping off coolant not to soil the luggage compartment or items of luggage.

1. Switch engine off and let it cool.
   Please see the chapter "COOLING SYSTEM" on Page 88.

2. Open the service flap by pulling the handhold.
3. Cover the expansion tank cap with a thick rag. Open cap slowly and carefully and allow overpressure to escape.
   Then unscrew cap completely.
4. Only add a mixture of antifreeze and water in equal parts, and do not exceed the "Max." mark.

   Antifreeze in coolant:
   50% gives protection down to –31 °F/–35 °C
   60% gives protection down to –58 °F/–50 °C
5. Screw cap firmly on.
6. Close service flap.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If in an emergency pure water has been added, the mix ratio must be corrected at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Marked loss of coolant indicates leakage in the cooling system.
The cause should immediately be remedied at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Engine-compartment blower, radiator fan

The radiator and radiator fans are in the front of the car.
The engine-compartment blower is mounted in the engine compartment.

Warning!

Risk of injury.
After the engine is switched off, the engine-compartment temperature is monitored for approx. 30 minutes.
During this period, and depending on temperature, the engine-compartment blower may continue to run or start to run.

▷ Carry out work in these areas only with the engine off, the ignition off, and exercise extreme caution.

Risk of injury. The radiator fans in the front end of the car may be operating or unexpectedly start operating when the engine is switched on.

▷ Carry out work in these areas only with the engine switched off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Oil

It is important to perform oil changes regularly in accordance with the intervals specified in the "Maintenance" booklet.

Engine oil consumption

It is normal for your engine to consume oil.
The rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of oil, the speed at which the engine is operated, the climate, road conditions as well as the amount of dilution and oxidation of the lubricant.

If the vehicle is used for repeated short trips, and consumes a normal amount of oil, the engine oil measurement may not show any drop in the oil level at all, even after 600 miles (1,000 km) or more. This is because the oil is gradually becoming diluted with fuel or moisture, making it appear that the oil level has not changed.
The diluting ingredients evaporate out when the vehicle is driven at high speeds, as on an expressway, making it then appear that oil is excessively consumed after driving at high speeds.

If the conditions you drive your vehicle in are dusty, humid, or hot, the frequency of the oil change intervals should be greater.

If the vehicle is driven at a high rate of speed, climatic conditions are warm, and the load is high, the oil should be checked more frequently, as driving conditions will determine the rate of oil consumption.

- The engine in your vehicle depends on oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts. Therefore, the engine oil should be checked regularly and kept at the required level.
- Make it a habit to have the engine oil level checked at every fuel filling.
- The oil pressure warning light is not an oil level indicator.
  The oil pressure warning light indicates serious engine damage may be occuring when lit, if engine rpm is above idle speed.

Engine Oil Level

▷ Please see the chapter "EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING ON YOUR VEHICLE" on Page 196.

▷ Regularly check the oil level using the on-board computer after the vehicle is refuelled.
Please see the chapter "OIL DISPLAY AND MEASUREMENT OF THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL" on Page 157.

The difference between the minimum and maximum marks on the segment display is approx. 1.3 quarts (1.25 liters).
Each segment of the display corresponds to approx. 0.42 quart (0.4 liter).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Topping off engine oil

Warning!

Engine oil is hazardous to your health and may be fatal if swallowed.

▷ Keep engine oil out of children's reach.

Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals.

▷ Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Caution!

Risk of damage from overflowing engine oil.

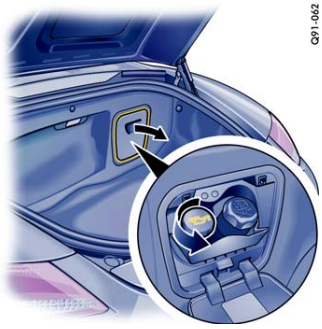
▷ Take care while checking and topping up engine oil not to soil the luggage compartment or items of luggage.

Note

The Check Engine warning light may light up if the cap of the oil filler opening is opened while the engine is running.

The oil inlet opening is located in the rear luggage compartment under the service flap.

1. Measure the oil level and read off the required top-up quantity on the on-board computer.
2. Switch off the engine.



3. Open the service flap by pulling the handhold.
4. Unscrew the oil filler cap.
5. Add at most 0.5 quarts (0.5 liter) of engine oil at a time.
   Never add more engine oil than required to reach the max. mark.
6. Close oil filler cap until you feel it reach its end position.
7. Measure oil level again with the on-board computer. Switch off the engine.
8. If necessary, repeat the process and add more engine oil as required.

Engine Oil Recommendation

Porsche recommends Mobil 1.

The right oil for your vehicle.

Complies with approval[1)]	Viscosity class[2)]
Porsche A40	SAE 0W - 40[3)] SAE 5W - 40[4)] SAE 5W - 50[4)]

1) Generally, you can find details of the manufacturer approvals on the oil containers or as a notice displayed by the retailer.
The current approval status is also available from your Porsche partner.

2) SAE viscosity class - Example: SAE 0W - 40
Specification 0W = Viscosity specification for low temperatures (winter).
Specification 40 = Viscosity specification for high temperatures.

3) For all temperature ranges.

4) For the temperature range over –13 °F (–25 °C).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Always observe the following points:

- Use engine oils approved by Porsche only. This is a precondition for optimum and problem-free operation of your vehicle.
- Regular oil changes are part of servicing. It is important that the service intervals, particularly the oil change intervals, are observed in accordance with the specifications in the "Maintenance" booklet.
- Oils approved by Porsche can be mixed with each other.
- Porsche engines are designed so that no oil additives may be used.
- A label is located in the engine compartment, which provides you with information on suitable oil for your engine.

Your Porsche partner will be pleased to advise you.

Oil change

The engine oil has to be changed regularly at the intervals listed in your **Maintenance Schedule**.

▷ Please see the chapter "CAPACITIES" on Page 281.

We recommend that you have the engine oil changed at your Porsche dealer, who has the required oils and the necessary filling equipment.

If you suspect an oil leak in the engine have your dealer check it out immediately.

All current engine oils are compatible with each other, i.e. when making an oil change it is not necessary to flush the engine if you wish to use a different brand or grade of oil.
Since, however, each brand of oil has a special composition, you should, if possible, use the same oil brand if it becomes necessary to top up between oil changes.

Porsche engines have long intervals between oil changes. You can make best use of these long oil change intervals by using multigrade oils since these are largely independent of seasonal fluctuations in temperature.

If your vehicle is used frequently in stop-and-go traffic in cold weather, the engine will not always be properly warmed up.
Condensation from products of combustion may accumulate in the oil. In this case, it is advisable to change the oil more frequently so that your engine once again has 100% efficient engine oil.

Engine oil performance class

Engine oil is not only a lubricant, but also serves to keep the engine clean, to neutralize the dirt which penetrates into the engine through combustion and to protect the engine against corrosion.
To perform these functions, the oil is provided with additives which have been specially developed for these functions.
The efficiency of an oil is expressed, for example, by the API, ILSAC or ACEA classifications.

Viscosity

Like all liquids, engine oil is viscous when cold, and thin-bodied when warm. The viscosity of an oil is expressed by its SAE class. For cold viscosity (measured at temperatures below 32 °F/0 °C) the SAE class is given as a number and the letter "W" (as in winter), for hot viscosity (measured at 212 °F/100 °C) the SAE class is given only as a number.

The viscosity of an oil is, therefore, always the same if it has the same number of an SAE class.

Oils with two viscosities are called multigrade oils; oils with only one viscosity are termed single-grade oils.

Single-grade oils can not be used in your engine.

The viscosity of the engine oil for your Porsche has to be chosen according to the ambient temperature given in the engine oil recommendation table.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake Fluid Level

▷ Please see the chapter "EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING ON YOUR VEHICLE" on Page 196.

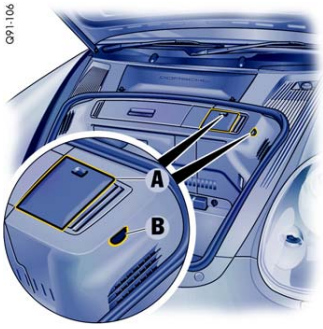
▷ **Use only new (unused) Original Porsche brake fluid.**

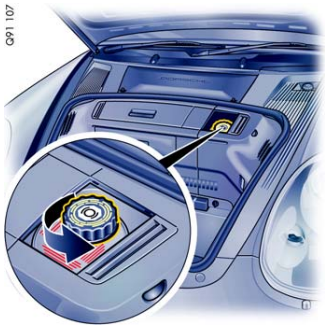
Warning!

Brake fluid is hazardous to your health, and may be fatal if swallowed.
Brake fluid also attacks paintwork.

▷ Keep brake fluid out of children's reach.

▷ Take care while topping off brake fluid not to soil the luggage compartment or items of luggage.





Checking the brake fluid level

The reservoir for the hydraulic braking and clutch systems is located in the luggage compartment.

1. Open and remove cover flap **A**.
2. Regularly check the brake-fluid level on the transparent expansion tank through the window **B**.
   The fluid level should always lie between the minimum and maximum marks.

A slight decrease in the fluid level due to wear and automatic readjustment of the disc brakes is normal.
If, however, the fluid level falls markedly or below the minimum mark, the braking system may have developed a leak.

▷ Have the brake system checked without delay at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing the brake fluid

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air over time. This accumulation of water lowers the boiling point and, under certain operating conditions, can affect the braking performance.
Therefore have the brake fluid changed in accordance with the change intervals stated in the brochure “Maintenance”.

BRAKE Warning light USA

Warning light Canada

– The warning lights on the instrument panel and on the on-board computer indicate an insufficient brake fluid level.

– If the warning light lights up on the instrument panel and the warning message appears on the on-board computer in combination with a larger pedal travel, a brake circuit may have failed.

If the warning lights should light up when driving:

▷ Stop immediately in a suitable place.

▷ Do not continue driving.
Consult an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel Economy

Fuel economy will vary depending on where, when and how you drive, optional equipment installed, and the general condition of your car.
A car tuned to specifications and correctly maintained, will help you to achieve optimal fuel economy.

- ▷ Have your vehicle tuned to specifications.
  Air cleaner should be dirt free to allow proper engine "breathing".
  Battery should be fully charged.
  Wheels should be properly aligned.
  Tires should be inflated at correct pressure.
- ▷ Always monitor your fuel consumption.
- ▷ Drive smoothly, avoid abrupt changes in speed as much as possible.
- ▷ Avoid jack rabbit starts and sudden stops.
- ▷ Do not drive longer than necessary in the lower gears. Shifting into a higher gear early without lugging the engine will help save fuel.
- ▷ Prolonged "warm up" idling wastes gas. Start the vehicle just before you are ready to drive. Accelerate slowly and smoothly.
- ▷ Switch off the engine if stationary for longer periods.
- ▷ Any additional weight carried in the vehicle reduces fuel economy. Always keep cargo to a minimum and remove all unnecessary items.
- ▷ Organize your trips to take in several errands in one trip.
- ▷ All electrical accessories contribute to increased fuel consumption.
- ▷ Only switch on the air conditioning when necessary.
- ▷ Do not drive with the Roof Transport System mounted unless you need it.

The EPA estimated mpg. is to be used for comparison purposes, actual mileage may be different from the estimated mpg., depending on your driving speed, weather conditions and trip length. Your actual highway mileage will probably be less than the estimated mpg.

- ▷ Please observe all local and national speed limits.

Operating your Porsche in other Countries

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, cars built for the U.S. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your Porsche outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that

- unleaded fuel may not be available;
- unleaded fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Excessive engine knock and serious damage to both engine and catalytic converters could result;
- service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or diagnostic equipment;
- replacement parts may not be available or very difficult to get.

Porsche cannot be responsible for the mechanical damage that could result because of inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

If you purchased your Porsche abroad and want to bring it back home, be sure to find out about shipping and forwarding requirements, as well as current import and customs regulations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel

Warning!

Fuel is highly flammable and harmful to health.

- ▷ Fire, open flame and smoking are prohibited when handling fuel.
- ▷ Avoid contact with skin or clothing.
- ▷ Do not inhale fuel vapors.

To prevent damage to the emission control system and engine:

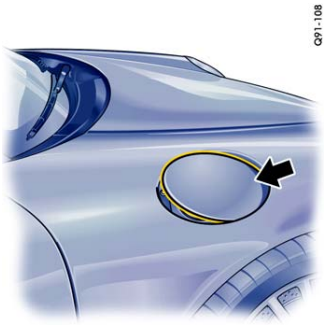
- ▷ Never drive the tank completely out of fuel.
- ▷ Avoid high cornering speeds after the warning lights have come on.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "FUEL ECONOMY" on Page 204.
Please see the chapter "EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM" on Page 208.
Please see the chapter "LEVEL GAGE" on Page 126.

Check engine warning light

If the warning lights in the instrument panel and on-board computer come on and remain on while driving, it suggests:

- a potential engine control problem and the need for system service **or**
- an improperly fastened tank cap **or**
- refueling with engine running.

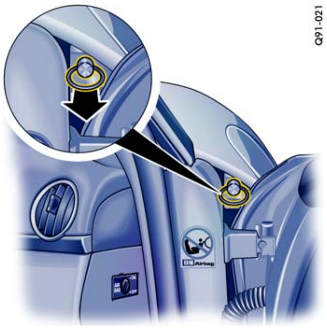


Opening the filler flap

The filler opening is under the filler flap in the front right fender.

- ▷ With the vehicle unlocked, press on the front part of the filler flap (**arrow**) to open the flap.

The filler flap is centrally locked along with the other locks.



If there is a defect in the automatic unlocking system:

- ▷ Open the passenger door.
- ▷ Pull the ring in the right-hand door aperture (**arrow**).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Refueling

Fuel tank capacity is listed under “Capacities”. Porsche does not recommend the use of fuel additives.

Fuel is highly flammable and harmful to health.

▷ Please see the chapter “CAPACITIES” on Page 281.

1. **Important:** Stop the engine and switch off the ignition.
2. Slowly unscrew the tank cap.
   Hang the tank cap's plastic strap on the hook on the inside wall of the filler flap.
3. Insert fuel-hose nozzle fully into the filler neck with the handle of the fuel-hose nozzle facing down.
4. Do not add further fuel once the correctly operated automatic fuel-hose nozzle has switched off.
   Fuel could spray or could run over in warm temperatures.
5. Replace the tank cap immediately after refueling and turn it until you hear it and feel it engage.

If you lose the tank cap, you must replace it only with an original part to reduce the possibility of a fire in the event of a collision.

Caution!

Risk of damage. Decorative film may fade if it comes into contact with fuel.

▷ Wipe off any emerging fuel immediately.

Fuel Recommendations

Your Porsche is equipped with catalytic converters and must use **UNLEADED FUEL ONLY**.

Your engine is designed to provide optimum performance and fuel economy using unleaded premium fuel with an octane rating of **98 RON (93 CLC or AKI)**. Porsche therefore recommends the use of these fuels in your vehicle.

Porsche also recognizes that these fuels may not always be available. Be assured that your vehicle will operate properly on unleaded premium fuels with octane numbers of at least **95 RON (90 CLC or AKI)**, since the engine's “Electronic Oktane™ knock control” will adapt the ignition timing, if necessary.

It is important to observe the regular service intervals, and particularly the oil change intervals, specified in the “Maintenance” booklet.

The use of UNLEADED FUEL ONLY is critically important to the life of the catalytic converters. Deposits from leaded fuels will ruin the converters and make it ineffective as an emission control device.

Cars with catalytic converters have a smaller fuel tank opening, and gas station pumps have smaller nozzles. This will prevent accidental pumping of leaded fuel into cars with catalytic converters.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Unleaded fuels may not be available outside the continental U.S. and Canada. Therefore, we recommend you do not take your car to areas or countries where unleaded fuel may not be available.

Octane ratings

Octane rating indicates a fuel's ability to resist detonation. Therefore, buying the correct octane gas is important to prevent engine "damage".

The RON octane rating is based on the research method. The CLC (U.S. **C**ost of **L**iving **C**ouncil octane rating) or AKI (**a**nti**k**nock **i**ndex) octane rating usually displayed on U.S. fuel pumps is calculated as research octane number plus motor octane number, divided by 2, that is written as:

$$\frac{RON+MON}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{R+M}{2}$$

The CLC or AKI octane rating is usually lower than the RON rating:

For example: 95 RON equals 90 CLC or AKI

Fuels containing ethanol

Do not use any fuels containing more than 10 percent ethanol by volume.

We recommend, however, to change to a different fuel or station if any of the following problems occur with your vehicle:

- Deterioration of driveability and performance.
- Substantially reduced fuel economy.
- Vapor lock and non-start problems, especially at high altitude or at high temperature.
- Engine malfunction or stalling.

Portable Fuel Containers

Danger!

Portable fuel containers, full or partially empty, may leak causing an explosion, or result in fire in case of an accident.

▷ Never carry additional fuel in portable containers in your vehicle.

Fuel Evaporation Control

Fuel tank venting

The evaporation chamber and the carbon canister prevent fuel from escaping to the atmosphere at extreme high outside temperatures, when driving abruptly around curves and when the car is parked at an incline or in any other nonlevel position.

Vapor control system and storage

When the fuel tank is filled, vapors are collected in the evaporation chamber by a vent line leading the vapors to the carbon canister where they are stored as long as the engine does not run.

Purge system

When the engine is running, the fuel vapors from the canister will be mixed with fresh air from the ambient air of the canister. This mixture will be directed to the intake air housing by the tank vent line, mixed with the intake air and burned during normal combustion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emission Control System

In the interest of clean air

Pollution of our environment has become a problem that is of increasing concern to all of us. We urge you to join us in our efforts for cleaner air in controlling the pollutants emitted from the automobile.

Porsche has developed an emission control system that controls or reduces those parts of the emission that can be harmful to our environment. Your Porsche is equipped with such a system.

Porsche warrants the Emission Control System in your new car under the terms and conditions set forth in the Warranty Booklet.

You, as the owner of the vehicle, have the responsibility to provide regular maintenance service for the vehicle and to keep a record of all maintenance work performed. To facilitate record keeping, have the service performed by authorized Porsche dealers. They have Porsche trained technicians and special tools to provide fast and efficient service.

To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:

- ▷ Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the recommendations described in your Maintenance Booklet.
  Lack of proper maintenance, as well as improper use of the vehicle, will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
- ▷ Do not alter or remove any component of the emission control system.
- ▷ Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, etc., which are designed to protect your vehicle's emission control system.
  In addition to serious engine damage, this can result in a fire if excess raw fuel reaches the exhaust system.
- ▷ Do not continue to operate your vehicle if you detect engine misfire or other unusual operating conditions.

Parking

⚠ Warning!

Danger of fire resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other flammable material.
- ▷ If your car catches on fire for any reason, call the fire department.
  Do not endanger your life by attempting to put out the fire.

Undercoating

⚠ Danger!

Danger of fire resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields. During driving the substance used for undercoating could overheat and ignite.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How Emission Control Works

When an automobile engine is running, it uses energy generated through the combustion of a mixture of air and fuel. Depending on whether a car is driven fast or slowly or whether the engine is cold or hot, some of the fuel (hydrocarbons) may not be burned completely, but may be discharged into the engine crankcase or exhaust system. Additonal hydrocarbons may enter the atmosphere through evaporation of fuel from the fuel tank. These hydrocarbons (HC), when released into the air, contribute to undesirable pollution.

In addition, carbon monoxide (CO) and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) contribute to engine emissions. They, too, are formed during the combustion process and discharged into the exhaust system.

To reduce these pollutants, your Porsche is equipped with a precisely calibrated fuel injection system to assure a finely balanced air/fuel mixture under all operating conditions.

Oxygen sensor

The oxygen sensor, installed in the exhaust pipe continuously senses the oxygen content of the exhaust and signals the information to an electronic control unit. The control unit corrects the air/fuel ratio, so the engine always receives an accurately metered air/fuel mixture.

Crankcase ventilation

Through crankcase ventilation, undesirable emissions from the engine crankcase are not permitted to reach the outside atmosphere. These emissions are recirculated from the crankcase to the air intake system. From here the emissions mix with the intake air and are later burned in the engine.

Catalytic converters

The catalytic converters are efficient “clean-up” devices built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converters burn the undesirable pollutants in the exhaust gas before it is released into the atmosphere.

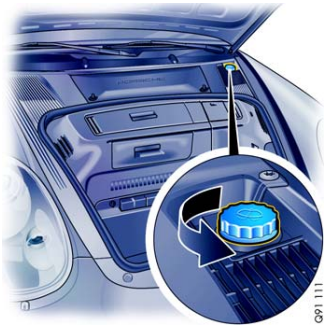
The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converters. Therefore, only unleaded fuel must be used.

The catalytic converters will be damaged by:

- push or tow starting the vehicle
- misfiring of the engine
- turning off the ignition while the vehicle is moving or
- driving until the fuel tank is completely empty
- by other unusual operating conditions.

▷ Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, since raw fuel might reach the catalytic converters. This could result in overheating of the converters. Federal law prohibits use of leaded fuel in this car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Washer Fluid

Capacity

- Without headlight cleaning system: approximately 2.6 quarts (2.5 liters).
- With headlight cleaning system: approximately 6.3 quarts (6 liters).

Washer fluid

The reservoir, with a blue screw cap, is in the front luggage compartment, to the rear left.

Clean water is generally not enough to clean the windshield and headlights. Depending on the season, mix the water with the appropriate additives. Follow the instructions for the mixture ratio.

Only use window cleaner concentrate which meets the following requirements.

- Dilutability 1:100
- Phosphate-free
- Suitable for plastic headlight lenses.

We recommend window cleaner concentrates approved by Porsche. Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you.

Summer filling

Water + window cleaner concentrate at the mixing ratio indicated on the container.

Winter filling

Water + antifreeze protection + window cleaner concentrate at the mixing ratio indicated on the container.

▷ Please note all the information on the containers of the window cleaner concentrate or the antifreeze protection.

Topping off washer fluid

1. Please note all the information on the refill container of the cleaning agent.
2. Open cap of the washer-fluid reservoir (arrow).
3. Top up washer fluid and close cap properly.

▷ Do not use engine coolant anti-freeze or any other solution that can damage the car's paint, in the washer reservoir.

Warning light

If less than 0.53 quarts (0.5 liter) remains, a warning message appears on the on-board computer.

▷ Add washer fluid.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Steering

Warning!

Risk of accident resulting in serious personal injury or death.
When the engine is stopped (e.g. when being towed) or the hydraulic system fails, there is no assistance for steering.
Therefore, substantially more force will have to be exerted in order to steer.

- Exercise great care when being towed.
- Have the fault remedied at your nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Note

The flow noise heard at full steering lock is system related and does not indicate a defect in the steering system.

Checking hydraulic fluid

- Please see the chapter "EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING ON YOUR VEHICLE" on Page 196.

The hydraulic fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Regular checking of hydraulic fluid is part of servicing.

Air Filter

A dirty air filter not only reduces engine performance, but can lead to premature engine wear.

Regular filter replacement is part of the routine maintenance service.

- In dusty conditions, check the filter element more frequently and replace if necessary.

Combination Filter

The fresh air passing through the combination filter into the passenger compartment is virtually free of dust, pollen, and unpleasant odors.

- If the outside air is polluted by exhaust fumes, press the circulating-air button.

A dirty filter can be the cause of reduced air flow:

- Have filter replaced by your authorized Porsche dealer.

Regular filter replacement is part of the routine maintenance service.

Fluids/Oils for Manual Transmission and Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)

The transmission fluids/oils have to be checked and changed at the intervals listed in your Maintenance Schedule.

- Please see the chapter "CAPACITIES" on Page 281.

Do not tow the car or run the engine without fluid/oil in the transmission. The transmission may be damaged by even a tiny speck of dirt, only a clean funnel or spout must be used when adding fluid/oil.

We recommend that you have the fluids/oils changed at your Porsche dealer, who has the required lubricants and the necessary filling equipment.

- If you suspect an oil leak in the transmission, have your authorized Porsche dealer check it out immediately.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wiper Blades

Wiper blades that are in perfect condition are vital for a clear view.

▷ Replace the wiper blades twice per year (before and after the cold season) or whenever wiper performance deteriorates.

Caution!

Risk of damage if the wiper arm accidentally falls back on to the window.

▷ Always hold the wiper arm securely when replacing the wiper blade.

Risk of damage if wiper blades that are frozen in place are loosened improperly.

▷ Thaw the wiper blades before loosening them.

Maintenance note

▷ Periodically clean the wiper blades with window cleaner, especially after the vehicle has been washed in a car wash.
We recommend the Porsche window cleaner. If they are very dirty (e.g. with insect remains), they can be cleaned with a sponge or cloth.

If the wiper blades rub or squeak, this can be as a result of the following:

– If the vehicle is washed in an automatic car wash, wax residues may adhere to the windshield. These wax residues can be removed only by using window cleaner concentrate.

– The wiper blades may be damaged or worn.

▷ Replace damaged or worn wiper blades as soon as possible.

▷ Please see the chapter “WASHER FLUID” on Page 210.

▷ Please contact your authorized Porsche dealer for further information.

Changing windshield wiper blades

▷ Please read the separate instructions for fitting wiper blades as supplied by the manufacturer.

▷ We recommend that you get your authorized Porsche dealer to replace the wiper blades.

Caution!

Risk of damage.
If the wiper blades are not changed properly, they can come loose when the car is moving.

▷ Check that the wiper blades are seated securely. The wiper blades must engage properly in the wiper arm.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Car Care Instructions

▷ Please see the chapter "EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING ON YOUR VEHICLE" on Page 196.

Regular and correct care helps to maintain the value of your car and is also a precondition for the New Vehicle Warranty and the Anti Corrosion Warranty.

Your authorized Porsche dealer has specially developed car-care products from the Porsche program available either singly or as complete car-care sets. They will be pleased to help you select suitable products.

Whether you use Porsche products or other commercially available cleaning agents first make sure of their correct application.

A Porsche that is well-cared for can look like new for years. It all depends on the amount of care the owner is willing to give the car.

Warning!

Risk of serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle or property.
Cleaning agents may be hazardous to your health.
Most chemical cleaners are concentrates which require dilution. High concentrations might cause problems ranging from irritation to serious injury as well as damage to your vehicle.

▷ Keep cleaning agents out of reach from children.

▷ Observe all caution labels.

▷ Always read directions on the container before using any product. These directions may contain information necessary to avoid personal injury.

▷ Do not use fuel, kerosene, naphtha, nail polish remover or other volatile cleaning fluids. They may be toxic, flammable or hazardous in other ways. Only use spot removing fluids in a well vented area.

▷ Do not clean the underside of chassis, fenders, wheel covers, etc., without protecting your hands and arms as you may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.

Moisture and road salt on brakes may affect braking efficiency.

▷ Test the brakes after each vehicle washing.

Decorative film

Caution!

Risk of damage due to separation of the decorative film when cleaning your vehicle with high-pressure cleaning equipment or steam cleaners.

▷ Do not use high-pressure cleaning equipment or steam cleaners for cleaning decorative film.

High-pressure cleaning units, steam cleaners

Warning!

High-pressure cleaning units or steam cleaners **can damage the following components:**

– tires,
– logos, emblems,
– painted surfaces,
– alternator,
– ParkAssist sensors,
– convertible top.

▷ Please observe the operating instructions from the unit manufacturer.

▷ When cleaning with a flat-jet nozzle or the like, maintain a minimum distance of 20 inches (50 cm).

▷ Never use high-pressure cleaning units or steam cleaners with a round-jet nozzle. A high-pressure cleaning unit or steam cleaners with round nozzle will damage your vehicle.

▷ The tires are particularly susceptible to damage.

▷ Do not point the cleaning jet directly at any of the aforementioned components.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Washing

The best method of protecting your car from the damaging effects of the environment is frequent washing and the application of a preservative. The underside of your vehicle should also be thoroughly washed for cinders, salt or sanding at winter's end.

The longer salt, road dust and industrial dust, dead insects, bird droppings or substances from trees (resin, pollen) are allowed to remain on the bodywork, the more serious is their harmful effect.

New cars should be washed carefully with plenty of clear water to protect the new paint work. Dark paint finishes show up the smallest of surface damage (e.g., scratches) more readily than lighter colors.

Dark colors are also more susceptible to scratching because of the composition of their pigments and require particularly careful paint care.

▷ Do not wash your car in bright sunlight or while the bodywork is still hot.

▷ When washing by hand, use abundant water, a soft sponge or wash brush, and Porsche car shampoo.

▷ Begin by spraying the body thoroughly with water to rinse away loose dirt.

▷ After washing, rinse the car with plenty of water and then dry with a chamois leather.
Do not use the same chamois leather for drying as you use for cleaning the windshield and windows.

Warning!

Moisture which gets on to the brakes during a car wash can reduce braking efficiency or make the brakes pull unevenly which could increase the danger of an accident, causing serious personal injuries or death.

▷ After washing the car, test the brakes and steering and briefly brake the discs dry.
When doing this, take care not to hamper other road users behind you (traffic conditions permitting).

Automatic car washes

▷ Please see the chapter "WIPER BLADES" on Page 212.

Optional add-on parts or parts which project beyond the contours of the vehicle may be damaged by design features (e.g. brushes) of automatic car washes.

The following parts are particularly susceptible to damage:

– Convertible top (hot wax treatment cannot be used, as the wax attacks the convertible top material)

– Windshield wipers (always switch them off to prevent them wiping unintentionally in intermittent or sensor operation)

– External antennas (always unscrew)

– Rear spoiler

– Wheels (the wider the rim and the lower the tire height, the greater the risk of damage)

– High-gloss wheels (to prevent these from getting scratched, do not clean with the wheel-cleaning brushes of the car wash).

▷ Please consult the operator before using automatic car washes.

▷ Wash and dry by hand all points not reached by a car wash, such as door and lid seams or door sills.

Note

Automatic car washes spray water at odd angles and high pressures, which are not seen in normal driving. Therefore, water can sometimes find its way into the passengers compartment during or shortly after the car wash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Convertible top

▷ Never remove snow and ice using a sharp edged object.

Incorrect care and treatment can damage the convertible top and cause leaks. Any repair work can be done by your authorized Porsche dealer.

Important note

No folding top is 100% leak proof.
Due to the constant changing of loads and strains to which a car is subject to when driving on roads, minor wind noise and seepage at joints between the top, body and doors on convertible tops cannot be completely sealed in certain areas. Therefore small leaks are considered normal for these models. In addition, your convertible top should not be washed in a car wash. The top may experience damage by the brushes or may experience leaks due to the high pressure water streams directed in areas which would not encounter water in normal driving conditions.

Cleaning

Caution!

Risk of damage due to the cleaning jet of the high-pressure cleaning equipment or hot wax treatment.

▷ Do not clean the convertible top with high-pressure cleaning equipment.

▷ Do not use the hot wax treatment.

Do not wash the convertible top each time the car is washed.
It is usually sufficient to spray or wash it with clean water.

▷ Brush dust off the convertible top in the direction of the weave using a soft brush.

▷ Only if there is heavy dirt, wet the convertible top with lukewarm water and the Porsche Wash-Shampoo & convertible-top cleaner, using a sponge or soft brush, and rub gently. Rinse Wash-Shampoo & convertible-top cleaner thoroughly off the convertible top with clean water.

▷ After washing it, treat the convertible-top cover at least once a year with the special Porsche convertible-top care product.
Do not allow the convertible-top care product to come into contact with paint or windows. If it does, remove immediately.

▷ If there is leakage in the convertible-top cover or at its seams or folds, the special Porsche convertible-top care product can be used.

▷ Please note the information on the container.

▷ Remove bird droppings immediately since the acid in them will make the rubber swell and the convertible top will become leaky.

▷ Open convertible top only when it is completely dry, otherwise damp stains and scrub marks may occur which cannot be removed.

▷ Try to remove spots from the convertible-top cover by rubbing carefully with a soft rubber sponge.

Door lock

▷ To prevent the door lock from freezing during the cold season, the lock cylinder should be covered during a wash.

▷ Should the lock freeze, use an ordinary de-icer. In many cases, a well warmed key can help. Never use excessive force.

Paint

To protect the paint on your vehicle in the best possible way against mechanical and chemical damage, you should

– preserve it regularly,

– polish it if necessary,

– remove spots and stains, and

– repair damaged paintwork.

▷ Do not apply care products containing silicone to the convertible top and windows.

General information

▷ Never rub a dusty vehicle with a dry cloth, because the grains of dirt will damage the paintwork.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▷ Do not treat matt-painted components with preservatives or polishes, otherwise the matt effect will be lost.

Preservation

The paint surface becomes dull over time due to weathering.

▷ Preserve paint regularly.

▷ Apply paint preservative after washing the vehicle and polish it smooth to preserve the paintwork.

This keeps the paint shiny and elastic. Dirt is prevented from adhering to the paint surface and industrial dust is prevented from penetrating the paint.

Polishing

Do not resort to using Porsche polish until it becomes evident that the normal preservatives no longer produce the desired finish.

Spots and stains

▷ Remove tar stains, grease, oil spots and dead insects as soon as possible with Insect Remover. They can cause discoloration if allowed to remain on the paintwork.

▷ Wash the affected area immediately after treating it.

Minor paint damage

▷ Have minor paint damage, such as scratches, scores or chips caused by flying stones, repaired immediately by your authorized Porsche dealer before corrosion sets in.

However, if there are already traces of corrosion, they must first be removed carefully and thoroughly. Coat the area with a rust-proofing primer and finish off with a top coat. The paint code and color number are found on the data bank in the Maintenance booklet.

▷ Please see the chapter "VEHICLE DATA BANK" on Page 274.

Engine compartment

The engine compartment and the surface of the engine are treated with a corrosion-inhibitor at the factory.

If degreasing solvents are used to clean the engine compartment or the engine is washed down, the process almost invariably removes the corrosion-inhibiting coating. It is then absolutely necessary to have a durable preservative applied to all surfaces, body seams, joints and assemblies in the engine compartment. This also applies when corrosion-inhibitor parts are replaced.

Caution!

Risk of damage to the alternator.

▷ Do not point the cleaning jet directly at the alternator, or cover the alternator.

Effective rust-proofing is particularly important during the cold weather season. If the vehicle is driven frequently in areas where salt has been spread on the roads, the engine compartment should be cleaned thoroughly and subsequently sealed after the cold weather season to prevent salt from causing any lasting damage.

Windows

The road dust which settles on the windshield and windows contains particles of tire rubber and oil residue. The interior trim and upholstery release particles, particularly in strong sunlight, which collect on the insides of the windows. These deposits are augmented by impurities in the air which enters the car through the fresh air vents.

▷ Clean all windows regularly, inside and outside, with Porsche window cleaner.

▷ If you use a chamois leather for the windows, do not use it for paintwork as it will otherwise pick up a certain amount of preservative or polish and could smear the windows and thus impair vision.

▷ Remove dead insects with Porsche insect remover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Door windows feature a water-repellent (hydrophobic) coating which prevents soiling of the windows.
This coating is subject to natural wear and can be renewed.

▷ Consult an authorized Porsche dealer.

Wiper blades

Wiper blades that are in perfect condition are vital for a clear view.

▷ Please see the chapter "WIPER BLADES" on Page 212.

▷ Replace the wiper blades twice per year (before and after the cold season) or whenever wiper performance deteriorates or the blades are damaged.

▷ Periodically clean the wiper blades with Porsche window cleaner, especially after the vehicle has been washed in a car wash.
If they are very dirty (e.g. with insect remains), they can be cleaned with a sponge or cloth.

If the wiper blades rub or squeak, this can be as a result of the following:

– If the vehicle is washed in an automatic car wash, residues may adhere to the windshield. These wax residues can be removed only by using window cleaner concentrate.

– The wiper blades may be damaged or worn.

– Replace damaged or worn wiper blades immediately.

▷ Please see the chapter "WASHER FLUID" on Page 210.

▷ Please contact your authorized Porsche dealer for further information.

Undercoating

As it is not possible to exclude the risk of damage to this protective coating in day to day driving, it is advisable to have the underside of the car inspected at certain intervals – preferably before the start of winter and again in spring – and the undercoating restored as necessary.

Your authorized Porsche dealer is familiar with the bodyseal treatment procedures and has the necessary equipment for applying factory approved materials. We recommend that you entrust them with such work and inspections.

Unlike conventional spray oils, undercoating and rust-proofing compounds based on bitumen or wax do not attack the sound-proofing materials applied at the factory.

⚠ Warning!

Danger of fire resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Do not apply additional undercoating or rust-proofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields. During driving the substance used for undercoating could overheat and ignite.

▷ Before applying fresh underseal, carefully remove any deposits of dirt and grease. Once it has dried, the new undercoating compound forms a tough protective coating which provides efficient rust-proofing of the floor panels and components.

▷ Always apply a fresh coating of suitable preservative to unprotected areas after cleaning the underside of the body, the transmission, the engine or carrying out repairs to underbody, engine or transmission components.

Effective rust-proofing is particularly important during the cold weather season. If your car is driven frequently in areas where salt has been spread on the roads, the whole engine compartment should be cleaned thoroughly after the winter to prevent salt from causing any lasting damage. A full under-body wash should also be performed at the same time.

Stainless steel exhaust tailpipes

Stainless steel exhaust tailpipes can discolor due to soiling, strong heat, and combustion residues.

The original polish can be achieved again using commercially available metal polishing paste or metal polish.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Light alloy wheels

▷ Please see the chapter "WASHING" on Page 214.

Warning!

Danger of accident resulting in serious personal injury or death if cleaning agents (e.g. wheel cleaning agents) come into contact with the brake discs.

The resulting film on the brake discs can impair braking performance.

▷ Make sure that no cleaning agent comes into contact with the brake discs.

▷ If cleaning agent has come into contact with the brake discs, thoroughly clean the brake discs with a strong jet of water.

▷ Paying attention to any road users behind you, dry the brake discs by applying the brakes at short intervals.

Metal particles (such as brass or copper in brake dust) must not remain too long on alloy wheels. Contact corrosion can cause pitting.

Cleaners with an oxide-removing effect or the wrong pH value, as are commonly used for other metals, as well as mechanical tools and products, will damage the oxide layer and are therefore unsuitable.

▷ Use only cleaners for alloy wheels (pH value 9.5). Products with the wrong pH value can destroy the protective layer on the wheels. We recommend Porsche cleaner for alloy rims.

▷ If possible, wash the wheels every two weeks with a sponge or washing brush. If the wheels are exposed to road salt, grit or industrial dust, weekly cleaning is necessary.

Door, roof, lid and window seals

Caution!

The lubricant coating on the inner door seals, convertible top and hardtop seals may be damaged by unsuitable cleaning and care agents.

▷ Do not use any chemical cleaning agents or solvents.

▷ Do not use any preservative agents.

▷ Wash dirt (e.g. abrasion, dust, road salt and grit) from all seals regularly using warm soapy water.

▷ If there is a risk of frost, protect the outer door seals and lid seals against freezing into place with a suitable care product.

Headlights, lights, interior and exterior plastic parts, adhesive films

▷ Use **only** clean water and a little dishwashing detergent to clean light lenses, plastic headlight lenses, plastic parts, adhesive films and surfaces.
Do not clean when dry.
Use a soft sponge or a soft, lint-free cloth. Gently wipe the surface without applying too much pressure.

An interior window cleaner can also be used to clean plastic surfaces (always read the cleaning instructions on the container). We recommend Porsche interior window cleaner.

▷ Gently wipe the surface without applying too much pressure.

▷ Do not clean when dry.

▷ Never use other chemical cleaners or solvents.

▷ Rinse cleaned surfaces with clear water.

Leather

Characteristics and special features

The natural surface markings of leather, e.g. creases, healed scars, insect sting marks, structural differences and slight variations in shade and grain add to the attractiveness of the natural leather product.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Observe the following care instructions:

Caution!

The leather will be damaged by the use of unsuitable cleaning and care agents and by incorrect treatment.

- ▷ Do not use caustic cleaners or hard cleaning aids.
- ▷ Perforated leather must under no circumstances get wet on its reverse side.

- ▷ Clean all types of leather regularly to remove fine dust using a soft, damp, white woollen cloth or a commercially available microfibre cloth.
- ▷ Remove heavy contamination with a leather cleaner.
  Always read the instructions for use given on the containers.
  We recommend Porsche leather cleaner.
- ▷ Treat cleaned leather only with a leather care product.
  We recommend the Porsche leather care product.

Cleaning airbags covers

Danger!

There is a danger of serious personal injury or death if the airbag system is impaired by improper cleaning work.

- ▷ Do not make any modifications whatsoever on individual components such as the padded covers of the steering wheel, passenger side instrument panel, the front seats and the door linings.
- ▷ Let your authorized Porsche dealer clean these components.

Carpets and floor-mats

- ▷ Use only a vacuum cleaner or a medium stiff brush.
- ▷ Remove stains and spots with Porsche stain remover.

To protect carpets, the Porsche range of accessories includes mats of the correct size and with the appropriate fastening.

Warning!

Risk of an accident resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Always check the movement of the pedals before driving and make sure that they are not obstructed by a floor-mat or any other object.
- ▷ Secure the floor-mat to prevent it from sliding into positions that could interfere with the safe operation of your vehicle - do not install them loosely in the vehicle.
  Your Porsche dealer will be glad to offer you nonskid floor-mats of the correct size.

Cleaning fabric linings

- ▷ Fabric linings on pillars, convertible top liner and sun blinds, etc. must be cleaned only using suitable cleaning agents or a suitable dry foam and a soft brush.

Alcantara

- ▷ Do not use a leather care product to clean Alcantara.

For regular care it is sufficient to clean the cover with a soft brush.

Heavy abrasion or rubbing when cleaning causes a lasting change in the surface.

Cleaning when lightly soiled

- ▷ Wet a soft cloth with water or a neutral soap solution and wipe off the dirt.

Cleaning when heavily soiled

- ▷ Wet a soft cloth with lukewarm water or thinned white spirit and dab the dirt from the outside in.

Cleaning safety belts

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Use mild detergent to clean soiled belts.
- When drying, avoid direct sunlight.
- Only use suitable cleaning agents.
- Do not tint or bleach the belts.
  The belt fabric could be weakened, thus affecting safety.

Storing your Porsche

If you intend to store your Porsche for a prolonged period, please consult your authorized Porsche dealer. The staff will be glad to advise you on the most suitable and necessary methods.

- Clean your vehicle thoroughly inside and outside.
  Clean the engine compartment.
  The under carriage and chassis components should be free of dirt and salt deposits.
- Fill up the fuel tank.
- Change the oil and oil filter, and run the engine for several minutes.
- Increase the tire pressure to 50 psi (3.5 bar).
  It is not recommended to lift the vehicle, due to the possibility of corrosion on shock absorber piston shafts.
  The vehicle should be moved slightly, approximately every four weeks, to prevent flat spot on the tires.

Climate control

The air conditioning system should be in good working condition and fully charged.

Windshield/Headlight washer

- Check and correct antifreeze/cleaning solution level as necessary.

Electrical system

- Remove the battery from the vehicle and store it in a cool dry place, not on a cement floor.
  When the battery is disconnected, the alarm system is deactivated.
- Recharge the battery every 3 months. If the battery remains in the vehicle with the cables connected, it is necessary to check, remove and recharge the battery every 2-3 weeks.
  Do not fast charge the battery.
- Please see the chapter “BATTERY” on Page 249.

Vehicle interior

The interior must be dry, especially in the area of the floor carpets. The use of drying agents (Silica-Gel) is recommended in vehicles with leather interior and in areas with high humidity. The recommended amount is 3 fabric bags of 1.1 lbs. (500 grams) each placed on the floor carpets.

Windows, doors and lids must be closed. The air vents should be opened.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Practical Tips, Emergency Service

Exercise Extreme Caution when Working on your Vehicle 222
Tires/Wheels 223
Loading Information 234
Wheel Bolts 236
Changing a wheel 237
Flat Tire..... 239
Lifting the Vehicle with a Lifting Platform or Garage Lift 242
Spacers 243
Electrical System 245
Battery 249
Replacing the remote-control battery 254
Emergency Starting with Jumper Cables 255
Bulb chart 257
Lights, Replacing Bulbs 257
Headlights 258
Number Plate Light 266
Changing Light-Emitting Diodes and Long-Life Bulbs 266
Adjusting Headlights 267
Towing 269

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Exercise Extreme Caution when Working on your Vehicle

Danger!

Ignoring the following instructions may cause serious personal injury or death.

- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. If you are not fully familiar with proper repair procedures, do not attempt the adjustments described on the following pages.
  This caution also applies to the entire vehicle.
- Only work on your vehicle outdoors or in a well ventilated area.
- Ensure that there are no open flames in the area of your vehicle at any time when fuel fumes might be present. Be especially cautious of such devices such as hot water heaters which ignite a flame intermittently.
- Before working on any part in the engine compartment, turn the engine off and let it cool down sufficiently. Hot engine compartment components can burn skin on contact.
- Be alert and cautious around engine at all times while the engine is running.
  If work has to be performed with the engine running, always set the parking brake, and make sure the shift lever is in neutral position or the PDK selector lever in position **P** or **N**.
- In particular, be very careful to ensure that items of clothing (ties, shirt, sleeves etc.), jewelry, long hair, hand or fingers cannot get caught in the engine-compartment blower, fan, belts or other moving parts.
  The radiator and radiator fans are in the front of the car.
  The engine-compartment blower is mounted in the engine-compartment.
  The fans can start or continue running as a function of temperature, even with the engine switched off.
  Carry out work in these areas only with the engine off, the ignition switched off, and exercise extreme caution.
- Your Porsche is equipped with an electronic ignition system. When the ignition is on, high voltage is present in all wires connected with the ignition system; therefore, exercise extreme caution when working on any part of the engine while the ignition is on or the engine is running.
- Always support your car with safety stands if it is necessary to work under the car.
  Jacks are not suitable for this kind of work.
- When working under the car without safety stands but with the wheels on the ground, make sure the car is on level ground, the wheels are blocked, and that the engine cannot be started.
  Remove the ignition key.
- Do not smoke or allow an open flame around the battery or fuel.
  Keep a fire extinguisher in close reach.
- Incomplete or improper servicing may cause problems in the operation of the car. If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Porsche dealer.
  Improper maintenance during the warranty period may affect your Porsche warranty coverage.
- Supplies of fluids, e.g. engine oil, brake fluid or coolant, are hazardous to your health.
  Keep these fluids out of children's reach and dispose of them in accordance with the appropriate regulations.
- Some countries require additional tools and special spare parts to be carried.
  Please make enquiries before driving abroad.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires/Wheels

The original equipment tires and wheel rims on your Porsche comply with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

For your safety remember the following:

- Wheel rims and wheel bolts are matched to fit your Porsche.
- If you intend to use other than original equipment wheels, be sure that they conform to Porsche specifications for your model.
  Only tires with the same make and with the same specification code (e.g. “N0”, “N1”...) can be mounted.
- The use of wheel rims and wheel bolts that do not meet specifications of the original factory installed equipment will affect the safe operation of your vehicle.
- Before you plan on exchanging wheels, or snow tires already mounted on the wheel rims, consult your authorized Porsche dealer. Your dealer has the technical information necessary to advise you which wheel rims and wheel bolts are compatible with the original factory installations.

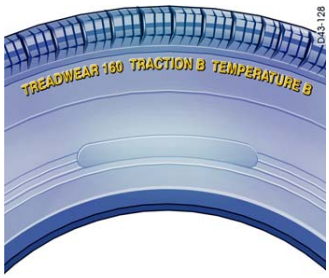
Danger!

Risk of loss of control and serious personal injury or death.

▷ If while driving, your vehicle experiences a sudden vibration or ride disturbance, and/or you suspect that possible damage to your tires or vehicle has occurred, you should immediately reduce your speed without excessive use of the brakes.

▷ Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and inspect the tires.
If you cannot determine the cause for the disturbance, have your vehicle towed to the nearest Porsche or tire dealer to have your vehicle or tire(s) inspected.

▷ Continuing to operate the vehicle without correction could result in a loss of control and serious personal injury.



Example

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specific government test course.
For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and a half (1-1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.
A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning!

The traction grade assigned to this is based on braking (straight-ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turned) traction, acceleration, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.
Sustained high temperatures can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.
The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.
Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning!

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.
Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

Tire pressures

Warning!

Incorrect tire pressure causes increased tire wear and adversely affects road handling. This could lead to tire failure, resulting in loss of control, leading to serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Always use an accurate tire pressure gage when checking inflation pressures.
- ▷ Do not exceed the maximum tire pressure listed on the tire sidewall.
  Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE PLATE" on Page 275.
- ▷ Cold tire inflation pressure means: all tires must be cold, ambient temperature maximum (68 °F/20 °C), when adjusting the inflation pressure.
  Avoid sunlight striking the tires before measuring cold pressures, since the pressures would rise from temperature influence.
- ▷ Valve caps protect the valve from dust and dirt, and thus from leakage.
  Always screw caps tightly down.
  Replace missing caps immediately.
- ▷ Use only plastic valve caps.
- ▷ Do not use commercially available sealant or tire inflating bottles. Only use Porsche approved tire sealant.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES (68 °F/20 °C)" on Page 277.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring (TPM) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPM is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPM low tire pressure telltale.

▷ On vehicles with tire pressure monitoring: Please see the chapter "TPM TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING" on Page 147.

When tires are warm, the tire pressure is increased.

▷ Never let air out of hot tires.
This could cause the tire pressure to fall below the prescribed value.

Insufficient tire filling pressure can cause tires to overheat and thus be damaged – even invisibly. Hidden tire damage is not eliminated by subsequently correcting the tire pressure.

Overloading

⚠ Danger!

Risk of damage to vehicle parts, loss of control and serious personal injury or death.

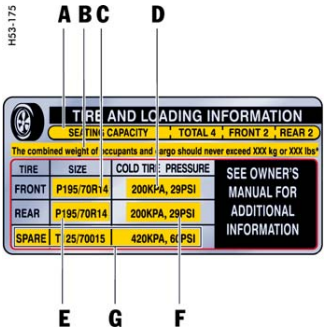
▷ Do not overload your vehicle. Be careful about the roof load.

▷ If loading the vehicle also correct the tire pressure. Tire pressure for loaded vehicle can be found on the tire pressure plate and in the chapter technical data.

▷ Never exceed the specified axle load. Overloading can shorten the service life of the tires and car, as well as lead to dangerous vehicle reactions and long braking distances. Damage due to overloading is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

▷ Please see the chapter "LOADING INFORMATION" on Page 234.

▷ Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES (68 °F/20 °C)" on Page 277.



Example of a tire pressure plate

Tire pressure plate

Information on the tire pressure plate

A Seating capacity
Maximum number of vehicle occupants, including the driver.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

B Vehicle load limit
Is the maximum total weight limit specified of the load (passengers and cargo) for the vehicle. This is the maximum weight of passengers and cargo that can be loaded into the vehicle. Please see the chapter "LOADING INFORMATION" on Page 234.

C Tire size for the front axle
Check with your authorized Porsche dealer about the current release status.

D Recommended tire pressure for the front axle
These values are for cold tires (68 °F/20 °C).

E Tire size for the rear axle
Check with your authorized Porsche dealer about the current release status.

F Recommended tire pressure for the rear axle.
These values are for cold tires (68 °F/20 °C).

G In vehicles with collapsible spare wheel:
Size and tire pressure of the spare wheel.

Tire traction

Warning!

When driving on wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water may build up between the tires and the road. This phenomenon is known as "hydroplane" and may cause partial or complete loss of traction, vehicle control or stopping ability.

▷ Reduce speed on wet surface to prevent this.

Tire life

Tire life depends on various factors, i. e., road surfaces, traffic and weather conditions, driving habits, type of tires and tire care.

▷ Inspect your tires for wear and damage before driving off. If you notice uneven or substantial wear, wheels might need alignment or tires should be balanced or replaced.

Tire wear

The original equipment tires on your Porsche have built-in tire wear indicators. They are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves and will appear as approximately 1/2 in. (12 mm) bands when the tire tread depth is down to 1/16 of an in. (1.6 mm).

When the indicators appear in two or more adjacent grooves, it is time to replace the tires. We recommend, however, that you do not let the tires wear down to this extent.
Worn tires cannot grip the road surface properly and are even less effective on wet roads.

Snow tires lose their traction capability when their tread depth falls below 5/32 in. (4 mm).

In the United States, state laws may govern the minimum tread depth permissible. Follow all such laws.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Danger!

Driving on worn tires can result in loss of control of the vehicle and could cause serious personal injuries or death.

- Do not drive with worn tires or tires showing cuts or bruises as they may lead to sudden deflation and loss of control which could cause severe personal injury.
- Specialized high performance tires on high performance sports cars exhibit more wear than those on a family sedan, or even a high performance sedan.
  Therefore, it is important to check your tire pressure and condition at least every two weeks.

If you notice that tires are wearing unevenly, consult your Porsche dealer.
Uneven wear may not always be due to improper wheel alignment. It can be the result of individual driving habits such as cornering at high speeds. If the tire pressure is not checked and adjusted regularly, abnormal tire wear can also occur.

Tire care

- Avoid damaging tires and wheel rims.
- If you must drive over a curb or other obstacle, drive slowly and at an obtuse angle.
- Check tires for uneven wear and damage before driving off.
- Remove imbedded material.
- Replace worn or damaged tires immediately.
- Keep oil, fuel, brake fluid, etc. away from tires.
- Replace missing valve stem caps.
- Keep tires inflated correctly.
- Wash tires when washing the vehicle. Also clean inner side of wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners when washing the wheels.
- Check wheel rims for corrosion.
- Remove road salt, if driving in winter.

Tire damage, puncture

High-pressure cleaning units can damage the tires.

- Please see the chapter “HIGH-PRESSURE CLEANING UNITS, STEAM CLEANERS” on Page 213.
- Check tires for imbedded material, cuts, punctures, cracks and bulges (side wall) before driving off.

In case of tire damage, where it is uncertain whether there is a break in the ply with all its consequences or tire damage caused by thermal or mechanical overloading due to loss of pressure or any other prior damage, we recommend that the tire be replaced for safety reasons.

If one faulty tire is replaced it should be noted that the difference in tread depth on one axle must not exceed 30%.
Handling inconsistencies may result.

- Perform a visual inspection if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Danger!

Risk of serious personal injury or death. Driving the vehicle with low tire pressure increases risk of a tire failure and resulting loss of control. Furthermore, low tire pressure increases rate of wear of the affected tires.

- ▷ Check tires – including sidewalls – regularly for foreign bodies, nicks, cuts, cracks and bulges.
- ▷ After driving off road, examine tires for signs of damage such as cuts, tears, bulges or foreign objects stuck in the tread. Replace a damaged tire if necessary.
- ▷ Cross curb edges slowly and at right angles if possible.
  Avoid driving over steep or sharp curbs.
- ▷ In cases of doubt, have the wheel (particularly the inner side) checked by an authorized Porsche dealer.

Tire replacements

If in doubt, contact your Porsche dealer.
Use only tire makes and types approved by Porsche.

If you do not use a Porsche recommended replacement tire, make sure that you purchase your new tires from a reputable tire dealer and that the dealer complies with all manufacturers warnings for those tires.

Only tires with the same make and with the same specification code (e.g. "N0", "N1"...) can be mounted.

Before mounting new tires, check with your Porsche dealer about the current release status.

Use tires with "ZR" quality standards. There are currently no standards concerning tire strength at speeds above 150 mph (240 km/h).

Tires should be replaced no less than on one axle at the time.
Only tires of the same make and type must be used. Mixed tires are not permissible.

Initially, new tires do not have their full traction. You should therefore drive at moderate speeds during the first 60 - 120 miles (100 - 200 km).

If new tires are installed only on one axle, a noticeable change in handling occurs due to the different tread depth of the other tires.
This happens especially if only rear tires are replaced. However, this condition disappears as the new tires are broken in.

- ▷ Please adjust your driving style accordingly.

Installation of new tires should only be done by a qualified tire technician.

Valves

Rubber valve stems must be replaced every time a tire is replaced.
For metal valves, the installation and replacement instructions must be observed.

- ▷ Use only genuine Porsche metal valves.
- ▷ Protect the valve inserts against soiling with valve caps.
  Soiled valve inserts can cause a gradual loss of air.
- ▷ Use only plastic valve caps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking at the curb

Warning!

Hard impacts against curbs (or traffic islands) are dangerous and may cause hidden tire damage which is not noticeable until later. Such damage can result in accidents at high speeds causing serious personal injury or death.
Depending on the force of impact, the edge of the rim can also be damaged.

- ▷ If you are in doubt, have the wheel checked by an expert, particularly if you suspect damage on the inside.
- ▷ If you must drive over a curb or other obstacle, drive slowly and at an obtuse angle. Exercise care when parking along curbs.

Wheel alignment, wheel balancing

As a precaution, have wheels with summer tires balanced in the spring, and those with mud and snow tires before winter.
Unbalanced wheels may affect car handling and tire life.
Only the specified weights may be used for wheel balancing.
Self-adhesive weights must not come into contact with cleaning agents, since they could drop off.
Uneven tread wear indicates wheel imbalance. In this event, the vehicle should be checked at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Warning!

If, during a trip, uneven running or vibrations occur that could be caused by damage to tires or the car, the speed must be reduced immediately, but without braking sharply.
If you continue your trip without having the cause of the fault remedied, you might lose control of your vehicle which could cause serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Stop the vehicle and check the tires.
- ▷ If no cause for the fault can be found, drive carefully to the nearest authorized Porsche dealer.

Wheels with Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPM) sensors

Before changing wheels, make sure that the wheels are compatible with your vehicle's TPM.

- ▷ Check this with your authorized Porsche dealer.

Removing and storing tires

- ▷ After changing, adjust tire pressure and torque wheel bolts diagonally to 94 ftlb (130 Nm).

Tires must always remain on the same side of the vehicle.
When wheels are removed, the direction of rotation and position of each wheel should be marked.

Example

FR (front right), FL, RR and RL.

Wheels must always be fitted in accordance with their marking.

The perception that tire durability and performance are immune to the effects of storage and age is unfounded.
Chemical additives, which make the rubber elastic, lose their effectiveness in the course of time and the rubber becomes brittle and cracks.

Therefore, the tires should be inspected from time to time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Under no circumstances should tires older than 6 years be used on your Porsche.

The age of the tire can be obtained from the "DOT" code number. If, for example, the last four numbers read 1208, then the tire was produced in the 12th week of 2008.

▷ **Store tires in a cool and dry place.**

Snow tires

For a better grip on snow and ice, use radial M+S tires with studs.
Check with your local Motor Vehicle Bureau for possible restrictions.

⚠ **Danger!**

Risk of loss of control and damage to the vehicle as well as serious personal injury or death.
The standard tires profile and rubber mixture are optimized for wet and dry driving conditions, and may not prove favorable for snow conditions.

▷ Therefore install M+S tires before driving in such conditions.

Before mounting snow tires, consult with your Porsche dealer. He has the technical information necessary to advise you on wheel and tire compatibility.

Snow tires should have the same load capacity as original equipment tires and should be mounted on all four wheels.
Snow tires with studs should be run at moderate speeds when new in order to give the studs time to settle.

⚠ **Danger!**

Tires with badly worn treads and studs are very dangerous and could cause accidents resulting in serious personal injuries or death.

▷ Make sure they are replaced immediately.

▷ Do not drive a vehicle equipped with snow tires at prolonged high speed.
Snow tires do not have the same degree of traction on dry, wet or snowfree roads as a normal tire.
Furthermore, snow tires wear rapidly under these conditions.

Comply with all state and local laws governing snow tire and tread depth requirements.

⚠ **Danger!**

Risk of accident and serious personal injury or death due to excessive speed.

▷ Always check the maximum speed rating on the tire sidewall on any tire on the vehicle.

▷ Never exceed the maximum speed rating of the tires.

▷ Fit winter tires to both axles well before the cold season begins.
Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you.

Maintenance note

We recommend fitting snow tires on the vehicle at temperatures below 45 °F (7 °C) since the driving performance of summer tires is reduced at low temperatures. Summer tires may be permanently damaged at extremely low temperatures.

Winter tires lose their traction capability when their tread depth falls below 5/32 in. (4 mm).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Snow chains

Caution!

Risk of damage to body, axle or brake components.

- ▷ Fit snow chains only to the rear wheels, and only with the tire/rim combination listed in the Technical Data.
  To ensure adequate clearance between chain and body, Porsche recommends only the use of fine-link chains such as those approved by Porsche.
- ▷ Follow instructions issued by the supplier of the chains.

Different states and countries have varying statutory requirements regarding maximum speed. Check with local authorities for possible restrictions.

- ▷ Remove chains as soon as the roads are free of ice and snow.

Fitting snow chains

The use of snow chains is not permitted when 5 mm spacers are mounted.

Caution!

Risk of damage to the wheel housings if the 5 mm spacers are not removed before fitting snow chains.

- ▷ To permit the fitting of snow chains, have the 5 mm spacers removed on all 4 wheels.

- ▷ To fit/remove the spacers:
  Please consult an authorized Porsche dealer.
- ▷ Please see the chapter “SPACERS” on Page 243.

Tire designations

Due to new speed and load ratings for radial tires, new designations have come into force for snow tires for your Porsche.

The designation to be used for ZR tires is e.g., 265/40 ZR 18 (Z = code letter for radial tires for speeds above 150 mph / 240 km/h).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Example of Inscription

Inscription on radial tire

A Tire size

Example: P 295/30 ZR 19 100 Y

- **P** - The tire is designed for Passenger vehicle. This information is not included on all tires.
- **295** - Indication of tire width in mm
- **30** - Indication of tire height to tire width ratio in percent
- **ZR -** code letter for radial tires for speeds above 150 mph / 240 km/h
  There are currently no standards concerning tire strength at speeds above 150 mph (240 km/h).
- **R** - Belt type code letter for radial
- **19** - Indication of rim diameter in inches
- **100** - Load capacity coefficient
- **Y** - Speed code letter
- **XL (Extra Load)** - Tire with increased load rating

B TIN (Tire Identification Number)

Example: DOT xx xx xxxx xxxx

- DOT
  The DOT symbol indicates that the tires comply with the requirements of the US Department of Transportation and provides information about:
- first two-digit code means manufacturer's identification mark.
- second two-digit code means tire size.
- third four-digit code means tire type code.
- fourth four-digit code means date of manufacture.
  If, for example, the last four numbers read 0208, the tire was produced in the 2nd week of 2008.

C Tire ply composition and material

The number of layers in the tread and sidewalls and their material composition.

D Maximum permissible inflation pressure

The maximum permissible cold inflation pressure to which a tire can be inflated.

▷ Do not exceed the permissible inflation pressure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

E Maximum Load rating

The maximum load in kilograms and pounds can be carried by the tire. If you replace tires always use a tire that has the same maximum load rating as the factory installed tire.

F Radial

The identification indicates if the tire has radial structure.

G Term of tubeless or tube tire

Identification for tubeless tires.

Speed code letter

The speed code letter indicates the maximum permissible speed for the tire.
This code letter is shown on the tire sidewall.

T	=	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
H	=	up to 131 mph (210 km/h)
V	=	up to 150 mph (240 km/h)
W	=	up to 167 mph (270 km/h)
Y	=	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)
(Y)	=	up to 186 mph (300 km/h) as for Y tires. Speeds of more than 300 km/h (186 mph) are also possible at a maximum tire load capacity of 85 % (confirmation from tire manufacturer required for speeds of more than 186 mph (300 km/h)).

Tip on driving

Tires with a maximum speed rating that is lower than the specified maximum vehicle speed may be mounted only if they bear an M+S identification on the tire sidewall.

▷ Please note that in addition to the winter tires, all-season and all-terrain tires are also subject to speed limits and bear this identification.

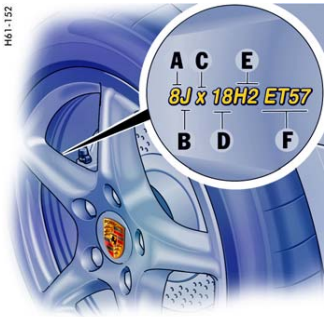
Inscription on light alloy wheels

Maintenance note

▷ Protect the valve inserts against soiling with valve caps.
Use only plastic valve caps.
Soiled valve inserts can cause a gradual loss of air.

Note on operation

▷ The rim width in inches **A** and the rim offset **F** are visible from the outside.
The information is inscribed on the back of the spokes near the tire valve.



A - *Rim width in inches*
B - *Rim-flange contour code letter*
C - *Symbol for drop-center rim*
D - *Rim diameter in inches*
E - *Double hump*
F - *Rim offset in mm*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Loading Information

Definitions

The Curb weight - actual weight of your vehicle - vehicle weight including standard and optional equipment, fluids and emergency tools. This weight does not include passengers and cargo.

The Gross Vehicle Weight is sum of the curb weight and the weight of passengers and cargo combined.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating is the maximum total weight of vehicle, passengers, luggage and optional equipment.

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load limit for the front or the rear axle. This information is located on the safety compliance sticker located in the driver's side door jamb.

For determining the compatibility of the tire and vehicle load capabilities:

▷ Please see the chapter "TECHNICAL DATA" on Page 276.

The load capacity coefficient (e.g. "100") is a minimum requirement.

The Gross Combined Weight Rating is the maximum total weight rating of vehicle, passengers and cargo.

The Vehicle Capacity Weight - Load Limit - is the maximum total weight limit specified of the load (passengers and cargo) for the vehicle. This is the maximum weight of passengers and cargo that can be loaded into the vehicle. This information can be found on the tire pressure plate.

The maximum loaded vehicle weight is the sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight and production options weight.

The load rating is the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

The maximum load rating is the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissble inflation pressure.

The cargo capacity is the permissible weight of cargo, the substracted weight of passengers from the load limit.

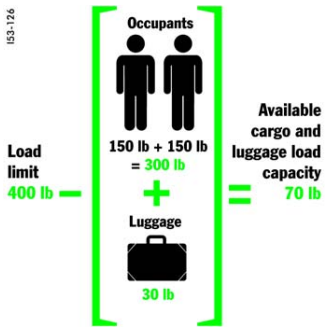
▷ Never exceed the permissible limits.

⚠ Danger!

Risk of loss of control, damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury or death.

▷ Never exceed the specified axle loads. Overloading can shorten the service life of the tires and car, as well as lead to dangerous vehicle reactions and long braking distances. Damage due to overloading is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Example for determining the combined weight of occupants and cargo

Vehicle Load Capacity

- The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed the weight shown on the tire plate in the vehicle.
  Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE PLATE" on Page 275.
- Never exceed the number of passengers shown on the tire pressure plate in the vehicle.

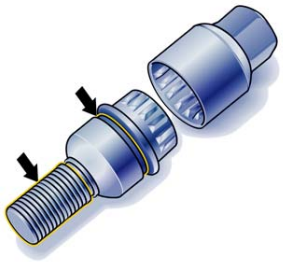
Determining the combined weight of occupants and cargo:

- Add the weight of all occupants and then add the total luggage weight (**figure**).

Steps for determining correct load limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX pounds" on your vehicle's placard (depending on the date of manufacture).
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or XXX pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 400 lbs. and there will be two - 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 100 lbs. (400 - 300 (2 x 150) = 100 lbs.).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Wheel Bolts

Danger!

Risk of wheel bolt breakage and wheel separation, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Follow all instructions concerning wheel bolts.

▷ Always clean the wheel bolts before fitting.

▷ Apply a thin coat of **Optimoly TA** (aluminum paste) on the thread and between the bolt head and movable spherical cap ring (**arrows**).
The bearing surface of the spherical cap facing the wheel must not be greased.

▷ Replace damaged wheel bolts.
Only use the Original Porsche wheel bolts specially designed for this vehicle type.

Tightening torque

Tightening torque of wheel bolts:
96 ftlb./130 Nm

Wheel Securing Bolts

If the wheels have to be removed at the workshop, please do not forget to hand over the wrench socket for the wheel securing bolts along with the car key.

The wrench socket for the wheel securing bolts is in the tool box.

To loosen or tighten the wheel bolt with anti-theft protection, a wrench socket with the appropriate coding must be used between the wheel bolt and the wheel-bolt spanner.

▷ When positioning the wrench socket, ensure that it engages fully in the teeth of the wheel bolt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing a wheel

Warning!

Risk of serious personal injury or death. The car may slip off the jack.

- ▷ Make sure that no one is in the vehicle when jacking up and changing a wheel.
- ▷ Always place the car on stable supports if work has to be carried out under the car.

Risk of damage to the brake discs of the Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB).

- ▷ Always screw in both assembly aids when changing a wheel.

Note

The tools required for changing a wheel (e.g. jack, wheel bolt wrench, assembly aids) are not supplied with the car.
Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you.

1. Apply the handbrake fully and engage 1st gear or PDK selector-lever position P and remove the ignition key.
2. Switch on the hazard warning lights if necessary.
3. Secure the car against rolling away, e.g. by means of wedges under the wheels on the opposite side.
   This is particularly important on slopes.
4. Slightly slacken the wheel bolts of the wheel to be changed.
5. Lift the car only at the specified jacking points.
6. Raise the car until the wheel lifts off the ground.
   Please see the chapter "LIFTING THE VEHICLE WITH A LIFTING PLATFORM OR GARAGE LIFT" on Page 242.
7. Remove 1 or 2 wheel bolts (see respective illustration).
8. Screw in assembly aids instead of the wheel bolts.

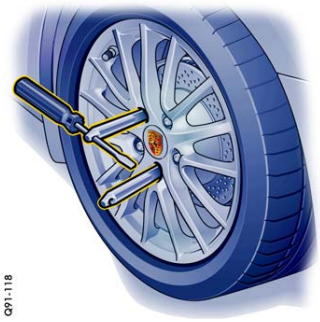
Screw in assembly aid for cars ***without*** *Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake*

9. Remove the remaining wheel bolts.

Note on operation

- ▷ To remove or mount the spacers:
  Please see the chapter "SPACERS" on Page 243.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Screw in two assembly aids for cars ***with*** *Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake*

10. Take the wheel off and put a new wheel on.

    Please see the chapter "WHEEL BOLTS" on Page 236.

11. Insert wheel bolts and tighten by hand.

12. Remove assembly aids, screw in remaining wheel bolts.
    Initially tighten bolts only slightly in diagonally opposite sequence so that the wheel is centred.

13. Inflate the tire if necessary.

    Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES (68 °F/20 °C)" on Page 277.

14. Lower the car fully and remove the jack.

15. Tighten wheel bolts in diagonally opposite sequence.

▶ **Immediately after changing a wheel, use a torque wrench to check the prescribed tightening torque (96 ftlb./130 Nm).**

Note on operation for vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring

▷ On vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring, the settings on the on-board computer must be updated after the wheel change.

▷ Please see the chapter "TPM TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING" on Page 147.

Checking tire pressure with a pressure gage

1. Remove the valve stem cap from the tire.
2. Press the pressure gage onto the valve stem.

Note on operation

▷ Do not press too hard or force the valve stem sideways, or air will escape.
If the sound of air escaping from the tire is heard, reposition the pressure gage.

3. Read the tire pressure on the gage stem and compare it to the permissble tire pressure.
   This information can be found on the tire pressure plate or in the chapter Technical Data.
   Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES (68 °F/20 °C)" on Page 277.
4. Remove the pressure gage.

▷ Please see the chapter "TPM TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING" on Page 147.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Flat Tire

Warning!

Failure to follow these instructions may result in serious personal injury to you or to bystanders.

- If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn the emergency flasher on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists. Set the parking brake.
- Do not park your vehicle where it may contact dry grass, brush or other flammable materials. The hot parts of the exhaust system could set such materials on fire, thereby causing both property damage and serious personal injury or death.

A tire sealant and compressor with pressure tester are located in the luggage compartment.

- Please observe the safety and operating instructions on the special sealant bottle with a special Porsche part number and on the compressor – these are essential.

Important note

Sealing the tire with the tire repair kit is only an emergency repair. Even with the tire airtight, it may be used only for short journeys in an emergency.
The maximum permitted speed is 50 mph (80 km/h).

- Do not use commercially available sealant or tire inflating bottles.
  Use only the tire sealant located in the luggage compartment.

Warning!

Risk of accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- Have tires replaced by a specialist workshop as soon as possible.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high cornering speeds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A - *Filler bottle*
B - *Filler hose*

Tire sealant

The tire sealant can be used to seal small cuts, especially in the tire tread.

Sealing the tire with the tire sealant is only an emergency repair, so you can drive to the next workshop. Even with the tire air-tight, it may be used only for short journeys in an emergency.

R81-160

The tire sealant and a compressor with pressure tester can be found in the luggage compartment.

The tire sealant comprises:

- A filler bottle
- A sticker denoting the maximum permissible speed for the driver's field of vision
- A filler hose
- A valve turner and
- A spare valve insert.

Danger!

Risk of accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Use the tire sealant only in the case of cuts or punctures no larger than 0.15 in. (4 mm).

▷ Never use the tire sealant if the rim is damaged.

Warning!

The sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health.

▷ Fire, naked flame and smoking are prohibited when handling tire sealant.

▷ Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing due to caustic chemical properties of the tire sealant.

▷ Keep tire sealant away from children.

▷ Do not inhale vapors, due to consequent harm to personal health resulting in serious personal injury or death.

In case of contact with the sealant:

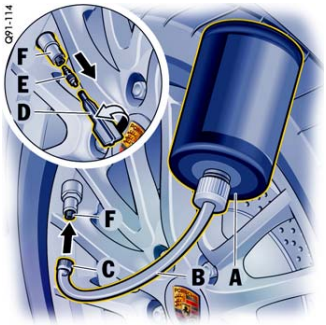
▷ If sealant gets on the skin or in the eyes, thoroughly rinse the affected part of the body off immediately.

▷ Change soiled clothing immediately.

▷ Get medical attention immediately in the event of an allergic reaction.

▷ If sealant was swallowed, thoroughly rinse out the mouth without delay and drink plenty of water.
Do not induce vomiting.
Get medical attention immediately.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A - *Filler bottle*
B - *Filler hose*
C - *Plug of the filler hose*
D - *Valve turner*
E - *Valve insert*
F - *Tire valve*

Inserting sealant

1. Leave the object that caused the puncture in the tire.
2. Remove sealant and the enclosed sticker from the luggage compartment.
3. Adhere the sticker in the driver's field of vision.
4. Shake filler bottle **A**.
5. Screw filler hose **B** onto the filler bottle.
   The filler bottle is now open.
6. Unscrew valve cap from tire valve **F**.
7. Remove valve insert **E** from the tire valve with valve turner **D**.
   Keep the valve insert in a clean and dry place.
8. Remove plug **C** of the filler hose **B**.
9. Push filler hose onto the tire valve.
10. Hold filler bottle higher than the level of the tire valve and press it together forcefully until the bottle is completely emptied into the tire.
11. Pull filler hose off the tire valve.
12. Twist the valve insert firmly into the tire valve using the valve turner.
13. Connect the compressor to the cigarette lighter and inflate the tire to the prescribed tire pressure.
    Please see the chapter "TIRE PRESSURE FOR COLD TIRES (68 °F/20 °C)" on Page 277.
14. Screw valve cap onto the tire valve.
15. Check the tire pressure after driving for around 10 minutes.
    If the tire pressure is less than 22 psi (1.5 bar), do not continue driving.
    If a value of more than 22 psi (1.5 bar) is indicated, correct the pressure to the prescribed value.
16. Please consult your authorized Porsche dealer.

Note on operation for vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring

- ▷ On vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring, the settings on the on-board computer must be updated after the wheel change.
  Please see the chapter "TPM TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING" on Page 147.

Care Instructions

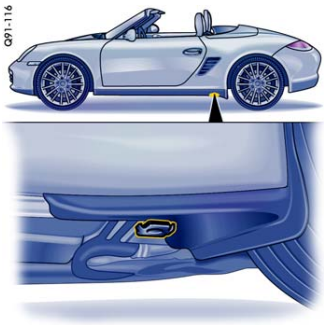
After drying, any sealant that emerges can be peeled off like a film.

⚠ Warning!

Risk of accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Have the tire replaced by an authorized Porsche dealer immediately.
- ▷ Avoid hard acceleration and high cornering speeds.
- ▷ Do not exceed maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).
- ▷ Please always observe the safety and operating instructions, which can be found in the separate operating instructions for the sealant and on the compressor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Lifting the Vehicle with a Lifting Platform or Garage Lift

The car must be raised **only** at the illustrated jacking points.

Caution!

Serious personal injury or death and/or serious damage to the engine or the vehicle may occur, if you lift the vehicle improperly.

- Never lift the vehicle at any other place than the jacking points.
- Never lift the vehicle by the engine, transmission or axles.
- Do not damage any sensitive components in the vicinity of the jacking points.

Platform lift

Before the car is driven on to a lifting platform, it must be ensured that there is enough space between the lifting platform and the vehicle.

Garage lift

A garage lift must be used **only** at the illustrated jacking points.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Spacers

▷ Use the spacers only together with wheels and fastening parts approved by Porsche.
Before having spacers fitted, find out about the current approval status.

Mounting an emergency spare wheel

If 5 mm spacers are mounted, these must **not** be removed to mount an emergency spare wheel.

Fitting snow chains

The use of snow chains is not permitted when 5 mm spacers are mounted.

Caution!

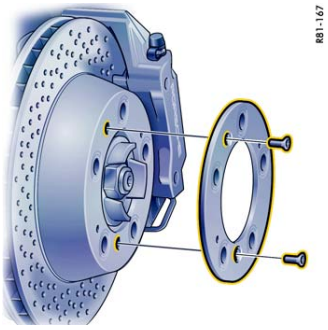
Risk of damage to the wheel housings if the 5 mm spacers are not removed before fitting snow chains.

▷ To permit the fitting of snow chains, have the 5 mm spacers removed **on all 4 wheels**.

Note on operation

▷ To fit/remove the spacers:
Please consult an authorized Porsche dealer.

▷ Please see the chapter "CHANGING A WHEEL" on Page 237.



Removing the spacers

1. Unscrew both countersunk screws (M6x16) on the wheel hub.
2. Remove the spacer.
3. Fasten the brake disc with the **short** M6x12 countersunk screws, part No.: 900.269.047.09.
Tightening torque **7.5 ftlb. (10 Nm)**.
4. For wheel mounting without a spacer, 5 mm **shorter** wheel bolts (part No.: 997.361.203.01) must be used.
Tightening torque: **96 ftlb. (130 Nm)**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mounting the spacers

1. Remove wheel.
2. Unscrew both countersunk screws (M6x12) on the break disc.
3. Fasten the spacer with the **long** M6x16 countersunk screws.
   Tightening torque **7.5 ftlb. (10 Nm)**.
4. Fit wheel. To do this use the **longer** wheel bolts for fastening the wheels.
   Tightening torque: **96 ftlb. (130 Nm)**.

▷ Please see the chapter "CHANGING A WHEEL" on Page 237.

Required scope of parts if the spacers are removed

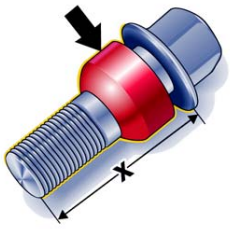
Short countersunk screws (M6x12)
Part No: 900.269.047.09

1 set short wheel bolts
Part No: 997.361.203.01

Short anti-theft protection
Part No: 996.361.057.01

▷ For information on the spacers: Please see the chapter "SPACERS" on Page 243.

R91-168



Long wheel bolt
- X: Bolt length approx. 49 mm
- Arrows: spherical cap ring

Wheel bolt identifying features

For identification purposes, the movable spherical cap ring is galvanised in red on the long wheel bolts.
The long wheel bolts must only be used together **with** 5 mm spacers fitted.

The **short** wheel bolts are not marked in colour. The short wheel bolts must only be used **without** 5 mm spacers fitted.

▷ Tightening torque for both wheel bolts: **96 ftlb. (130 Nm)**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electrical System

In order to avoid damage and faults in electrical or electronic systems, electrical accessories should be installed at your authorized Porsche dealer.

▷ Only use accessories authorized by Porsche.

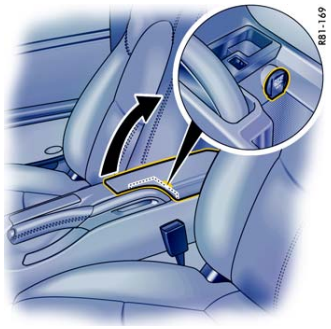
⚠ Warning!

Risk of short circuit and fire, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
Replacing fuses or relays with the engine running or the ignition on could cause electrical shock.

▷ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.
Please see the chapter "BATTERY" on Page 249.

Relays

Defective **relays** should be changed only by an authorized workshop.



In storage tray between the front seats (not on vehicles with iPod, USB, AUX interfaces)

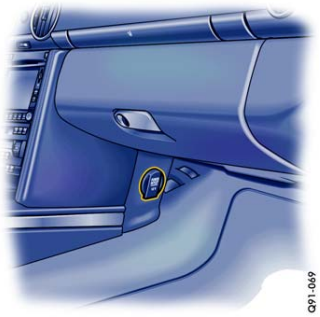
Sockets

Electrical accessories should preferably be connected to the 12 V sockets.

▷ Please observe the maximum power consumption.

Note on operation

The tire filling compressor must be connected to the cigarette lighter.



In the passenger's footwell

Note on operation

The sockets and thus the connected electrical accessories function even if the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn.

If the engine is not running and the accessories are switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged.
Do not operate additional accessories for more than 5 minutes when engine is off. Continuing to do so may drain the battery such that it may go completely dead.

Maximum power consumption for both sockets together: 70 W.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Alarm system, central locking

The status of the central locking and alarm system is not changed by disconnecting the battery. When the battery is disconnected, the alarm system ceases to function.

Central locking overload protection

If the central locking system is operated more than ten times within a minute, further operation is blocked for 30 seconds.

Load switch-off after 2 hours or 7 days

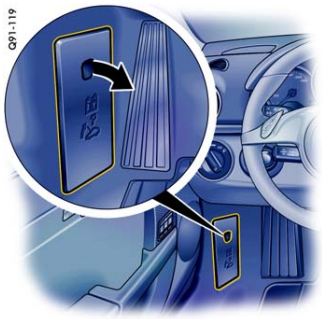
If the ignition key is removed, loads which are switched on or are in standby mode (such as the luggage compartment light and interior light) are automatically switched off after approx. **2 hours**. The Radio/PCM is automatically switched off after approx. **10 minutes.**

If the vehicle is not started or unlocked with the remote control within **7 days**, the remote control standby function is switched off (to save the vehicle battery).

1. In this case, unlock the driver's door with the key at the door lock.
   Leave the door closed in order to prevent the alarm system from being triggered.
2. Press **button 1** on the remote control.

The remote control is now activated again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A - *Plastic gripper*
B - *Spare fuses*

Replacing fuses

In order to prevent damage to the electrical system due to short circuits and overloads, the individual circuits are protected by fuses.
The fuse box is located in the driver's footwell.

1. Switch off the load with the defective fuse.
2. Pull off plastic cover at the finger hole (**arrow**). The **fuse plan** and **instructions for emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid** can be found on the inner side of the cover.
3. Remove the corresponding fuse from its slot using the plastic gripper **A** in order to check it. A blown fuse can be identified by the melted metal strip.
4. Replace only with fuses of the same rating. We recommend using genuine Porsche fuses for replacement.

Note

▷ If a fuse blows repeatedly consult an authorized Porsche dealer.

▷ Never try to "repair" fuses: you may cause serious damage to other parts of the electrical system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency unlocking of the front luggage compartment lid

If the battery is discharged, the front luggage compartment lid can be opened only with the aid of a donor battery.

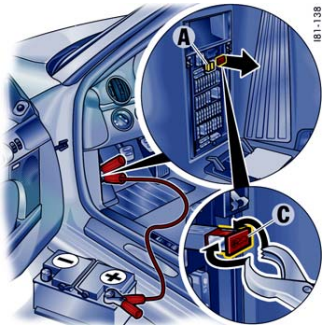
Note

The engine **cannot** be started with this method.

▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY STARTING WITH JUMPER CABLES" on Page 255.

Unlocking lid

1. Use the key to unlock the vehicle at the door lock.
2. Remove the plastic cover from the fuse box.
3. Pull out positive terminal **C** (red) in the fuse box using the plastic gripper **A** (yellow).

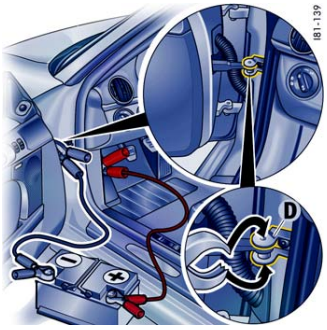


A *- Plastic gripper (yellow)*
C *- Positive terminal (red)*

4. Use a jumper cable to connect the positive terminal of the donor battery to the positive terminal **C** in the fuse box.

Note

If the vehicle was locked, the alarm horn will sound when the negative cable is connected.



5. Use the black jumper cable to connect the negative terminal of the donor battery to the door arrester **D**.
6. Press button **2** on the remote control for approx. 2 seconds to unlock the luggage compartment lid.
   The alarm system is switched off.
7. Disconnect the negative cable first, then the positive cable.
8. Push positive terminal **C** into the fuse box and push on the plastic fuse box cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Battery

The battery is located in the front luggage compartment under a black plastic cover.

- ▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY OPERATION – PULLING OUT THE IGNITION KEY" on Page 74.
- ▷ Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY UNLOCKING OF THE FRONT LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT LID" on Page 248.

Warning!

Risk of short circuit, fire and damage to alternerator and electronic control units, **resulting in serious personal injury or death.**

- ▷ Observe all warning notes on the battery.
- ▷ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.
- ▷ Do not lay tools or other metal objects on the battery as they could cause a short circuit across the battery terminal.

Hydrogen gas generated by the battery could cause an explosion, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electrical spark or a lit cigarette.
- ▷ Do not wipe battery with a dry cloth.

Risk of serious personal injury or death and damage to the fabric, metal or paint.

- ▷ Wear eye protection.
- ▷ Do not allow battery acid to come in contact with your skin, eyes, fabric or painted surfaces.
- ▷ If you get electrolyte, which is an acid, in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and call a doctor.
- ▷ Spilled electrolyte must be rinsed off at once with a solution of baking soda and water to neutralize the acid.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.

- ▷ Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Risk of explosion as a result of static charge, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Do not wipe the battery with a dry cloth.
- ▷ Eliminate potential electrostatic charge by touching the vehicle before touching the battery.

Charge state

A well-charged battery prevents starting problems and has a longer service life.
Traffic density, requirements regarding noise, exhaust gas and fuel consumption reduce the engine speed and, hence, the alternator output.
However, the large number of electrical loads has markedly increased the demand for electrical power.

In order to avoid discharging the battery unintentionally:

- ▷ Switch off unnecessary electrical loads in city traffic, on short trips or in a line or traffic.
- ▷ Always remove the ignition key from the ignition switch when leaving the car.
- ▷ Avoid frequent operation of the convertible top and operation of the Porsche Communication Management system and audio system when the engine is not running.
- ▷ In the cold season in particular or if the vehicle is used primarily for short journeys, it may be necessary to recharge the battery from time to time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Battery care

- ▷ Ensure that battery is securely mounted.
- ▷ Keep terminals and connections clean and properly tightened.
  Corrosion can be prevented by coating the terminals and connections with petroleum jelly or silicone spray.
- ▷ Ensure that vent caps are securely tightened to prevent spillage.

Checking the electrolyte fluid level

The acid level should be checked more frequently by a qualified specialist workshop during the summer months and in predominantly warm countries.

Battery charging

Automotive batteries lose their efficiency when not in use.
The charge available in your battery can be measured with a battery hydrometer.
We recommend that the battery voltage be tested by your authorized Porsche dealer who has the appropriate equipment.

If the car is not driven for prolonged periods, the battery must be charged at least every 6 weeks. A discharged battery allows rapid formation of sulfates, leading to premature deterioration of the plates.

Warning!

Hydrogen gas generated by the battery could cause an explosion, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- ▷ Charge battery in a well ventilated area.
- ▷ Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.
- ▷ If you get electrolyte, which is an acid, in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and call a doctor.

Slow battery charging

Your authorized Porsche dealer will be pleased to advise you about a suitable charger.

1. Always observe the instructions of the charger manufacturer.
   Depending on the type of charger, the battery may have to be disconnected.
   In this case, always disconnect the negative lead first, and then the positive lead – risk of short circuit!

   Reconnect the leads in reverse order.
2. Before charging, cold batteries must be warmed up indoors.
3. Frozen batteries must be thawed out first before being charged.
4. When charging, ensure that there is adequate ventilation.
5. Connect the charger to the battery.
   Only plug into the mains and switch the charger on when it is connected up correctly.
6. Switch on the charger.
7. After charging, switch off the charger first and then disconnect it.

- ▷ Please see the chapter “PUTTING VEHICLE INTO OPERATION” on Page 251.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Winter operation

The capacity and ability of the battery to store power decreases at low outside temperatures. Moreover, the battery is more heavily loaded in winter months, e.g. by the heated rear window, more frequent use of additional lights, the fans and the windshield wipers, etc.

▷ Have the battery checked before the start of winter.

Maintenance note

Keep the battery well charged to prevent it from freezing.

A discharged battery can freeze at 23 °F (–5 °C), but a fully charged battery only freezes at – 40 °F (–40 °C).

A frozen battery must always be thawed before connecting jump leads.

Replacing battery

The service life of the battery is subject to normal wear; it depends greatly on care, climatic conditions, and driving conditions (distances, loads).

▷ Only use an original Porsche battery, with the correct part number, as a replacement.

▷ Please observe the disposal instructions for batteries.

Putting vehicle into operation

After the battery is connected or after an **exhaustively discharged** battery is charged, the multifunctional PSM light lights up on the instrument panel and a message appears on the on-board computer to indicate a fault.

This fault can be remedied with a few simple steps:

1. Start the engine.
2. With the vehicle stationary, perform a few steering movements to the left and right and then drive a short distance in a straight line until the multifunctinal PSM light goes out and the message on the on-board computer disappears.
3. If the warnings do **not** disappear, then:
   Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Porsche dealer.
   Have the fault remedied.
4. After the warnings disappear:
   Stop the vehicle in a suitable place.

▷ Perform adaptation of the power windows: Please see the chapter “STORING END POSITION OF THE WINDOWS” on Page 28.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the battery

The required tool is in the tool kit.

The battery is located in the front luggage compartment under a black plastic lid.

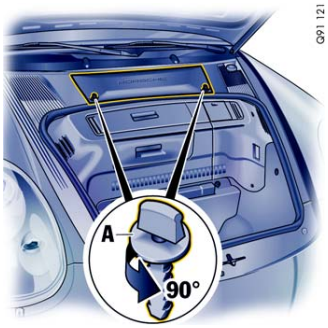
Warning!

Risk of damage to alternator and electronic control units.

- Do not disconnect the battery while the engine is running.
  This also applies to cars equipped with a battery main switch.
- Never drive the car with a disconnected battery.

Risk of caustic burns from escaping acid.

- Keep vent caps on to avoid spillage.
- Do not tilt the battery when removing and installing it.



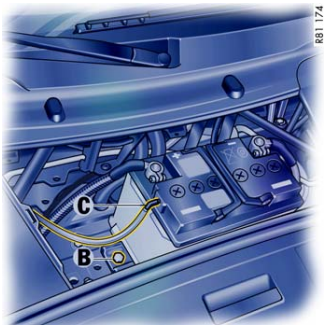
Q91 121

1. Switch off engine and all electrical loads.
2. Open turn-locks **A**.
   Remove plastic lid.
3. Pull off central vent hose **C**.

Danger!

Risk of short circuit and explosion, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- Important: disconnect the negative (**–**) ground wire first, and then the positive (**+**) cable.



R81 174

4. Important: disconnect the negative (**–**) ground wire first, and then the positive (**+**) cable - danger of short circuit!
5. Unscrew fastening screw **B**.
6. Remove battery.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing the battery

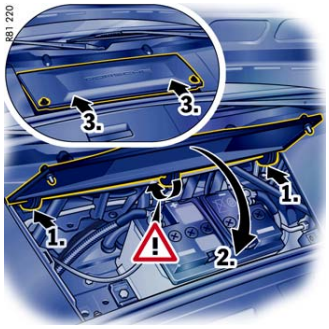
1. Put battery in and push it all the way to the stop.
2. Screw in fastening screw **B**.

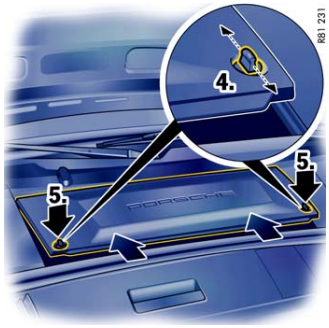
Danger!

Risk of short circuit and explosion, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Important: connect the positive (**+**) cable first, and then the negative (**–**) ground wire.

3. Important: connect the positive (**+**) cable first, and then the negative (**–**) ground wire - danger of short circuit!
4. Push on central vent hose **C**.





Fitting the plastic lid

1. Insert the two outer hooks of the plastic lid into the eye mounts of the lid opening.
2. Lower the lid.
3. Using both hands, push the lid into the eye mounts without using force (if too much force is used, the hooks may jam and the panel will warp).
   Make sure that the lid is correctly seated.
4. Turn the turn-locks so that they point in longitudinal direction.
5. Press the turn-locks down until they audibly engage.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

R81-175

Replacing the remote-control battery

The battery should be changed when the range of the radio remote control becomes smaller or when the light-emitting diode no longer flashes when the remote control is operated.

1. Using your finger nail or a small screwdriver, carefully lift off the cover of the key grip (arrow).
2. Replace the battery (paying attention to the polarity).
   Replacement battery – Lithium CR 2032, 3 volts.
3. Replace the cover and press together firmly. Please observe the disposal instructions for batteries.

Note

▷ Please dispose batteries in compliance with any and all government regulations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency Starting with Jumper Cables

If the battery is discharged, e.g. in winter or after the car has been parked for a long time, the battery of another car can be used for starting with the help of jumper cables.
Make sure the voltage of both batteries is the same. Both batteries must be 12 volt types.
The capacity (Ampere hours, Ah) of the booster battery must not be substantially less than that of the discharged battery.
The discharged battery must be correctly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

- Please see the chapter "BATTERY" on Page 249.
- Please see the chapter "EMERGENCY UNLOCKING OF THE FRONT LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT LID" on Page 248.

Note

- Do not try to start the car by pushing or towing. Damage to the catalytic converters and other components of the car may result.

Warning!

Risk of short circuit, damage and explosion, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- Use only jumper cables of adequate diameter cross-section and fitted with completely insulated alligator clips.
- Follow all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer.
- When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
  The jumper cables must be long enough so that neither vehicles nor cables touch another.
- The vehicles must not be in contact, otherwise current might flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.
- The cable clamps must not be allowed to contact each other when one end of the jumper cables are connected to a battery.
- Ensure that tools or conductive jewelery (rings, chains, watch straps) do not come into contact with the positive jumper cable or the positive battery post.
- Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the alternator.

Danger of caustic burns from escaping acid**.**

- Do not lean over the battery.

Danger of gas explosion.

- Improper use of booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- Keep sources of ignition away from the battery, e.g. open flame, burning cigarettes or sparking due to cable contact or welding work.
- A discharged battery can freeze even at 23 °F/ –5 °C.
  Before connecting jumper cables, a frozen battery must be thawed out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Connect jumper cables in the following sequence:

Always observe the sequence below:

1. Connect the **positive lead (red)** to the positive terminal of the discharged battery first, then connect it to the positive terminal of the donor battery.
2. First connect the **negative cable (black)** to the negative terminal of the donor battery, then connect it to a suitable grounding point on the vehicle with the discharged battery.
   This grounding point must lie as far as possible from the battery.
   For example, a solid metal part or the engine block are suitable grounding points.

   If no suitable grounding points are to be found on either vehicle, the negative cable must carefully be connected directly to the negative terminal of the battery.

   If a suitable grounding point is to be found only on the donor vehicle, the negative cable must first be connected to the terminal of the discharged battery, then to the grounding point of the donor vehicle.
3. Run the engine of the donor car at a higher speed.
4. Start the engine.
   An attempted start using jumper cables should not last more than 15 seconds. Then allow a waiting period of at least one minute.

▷ **Note**
Before disconnecting the jumper cables, electrical loads such as the heated rear window and the heating fan blower should be switched on (the vehicle's lights must **not** be switched on). This reduces voltage peaks which may occur when disconnecting the jumper cables.

With the engine running, remove both jumper cables in reverse order.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bulb chart

	Type, rating
Halogen low beam	H7, 55W
Halogen high beam	H9, 65W
Low beam/high beam with Bi-Xenon headlights	Philips, D2S 35W
Additional high beam with Bi-Xenon headlights	H7, 55 W
Turn signal light, front	Philips HY21W
Turn signal light, side	WY5W
Fog light	H8, 35W
License plate light	C5W

Lights, Replacing Bulbs

Warning!

Risk of short circuit.

▷ Always switch off the relevant consumer when changing bulbs.

Risk of serious personal injury or death. The Bi-Xenon headlights are under high voltage when installed.

▷ Be careful during all work in the area of the Bi-Xenon headlights.

Risk of damage. Bulbs of a higher wattage can damage the lamp housing.

▷ Only the bulbs shown in the chart may be used.

▷ New bulbs must be clean and free from oil, grease and fingerprints. **Therefore, never touch bulbs with your bare hands.**
Use a cloth or soft paper while replacing bulbs.

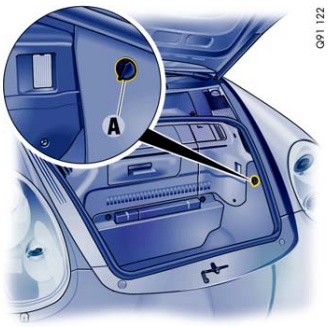
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

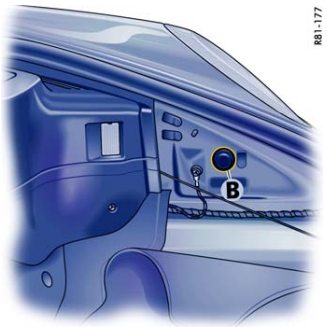
Headlights

Caution!

Risk of damage to headlights due to excessive temperatures and abrasion.

- ▷ To ensure optimum ventilation, do not cover the gap between headlight and body (e.g. “stone guards” or films).
- ▷ Use soapy water only to clean light lenses and plastic headlight lenses.
  In no case may chemical cleaners or other volatile cleaning fluids be used.
- ▷ To prevent scratches, do not rub with a dry or merely moist cloth, tissue or insect sponges.

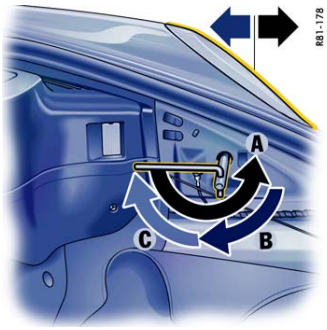




Removing headlights

1. Unscrew plastic nut **A**.
   Detach the side carpeting.
2. Remove rubber plug **B** from the unlocking opening.

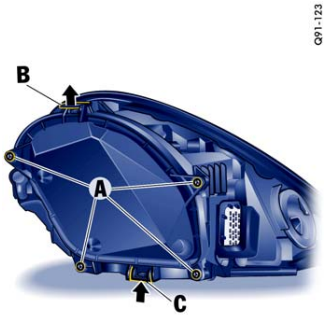
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Place socket wrench (tool kit) on the unlocking spindle.
   The handle of the wrench should point horizontally to the rear.
4. Turn socket wrench approx. 180° **A**. The headlight is unlocked and pushed forward slightly during this process.
5. Turn socket wrench back until it is pointing vertically downward **B** and leave in position.
6. The headlight is now unlocked and can be pulled forward out of the fender.

Installing

1. Insert headlight into the guide rails and push fully into the fender.
2. Push headlight to the rear and at the same time turn the socket wrench until it points horizontally to the rear **C**.
   The headlight locking device must perceptibly and audibly engage.
3. Insert the rubber plug into the unlocking opening and secure the carpet.
   Check the function of all lights.

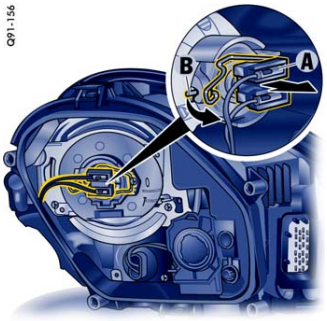


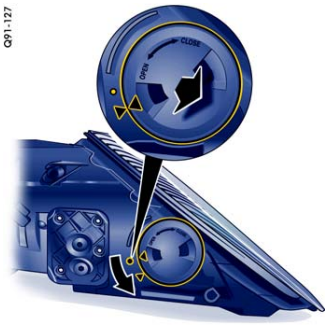
Low beam/high beam
Halogen/Bi-Xenon headlight

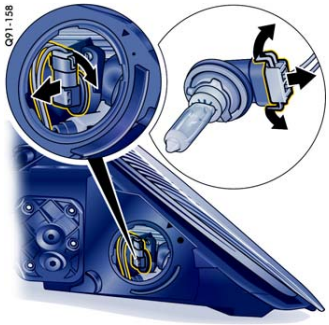
Opening the lid of the headlight housing

1. Unscrew the 4 screws **A**.
2. First lift release tab **B**, then push both release tabs **C** upwards and take off lid.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine







Changing bulb for low beam Halogen headlights

1. Pull off plug **A**.
2. Disengage fixing clip **B**.
3. Replace defective bulb.
   When doing so, ensure bulb is seated properly.
4. Reassemble in reverse order.

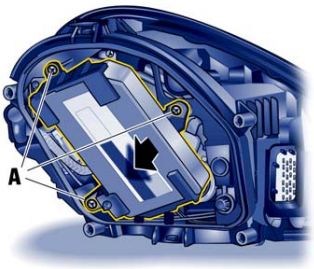
Closing the cover of the headlight housing

1. Push on cover until it is felt to engage.
2. Fasten cover with the 4 screws.

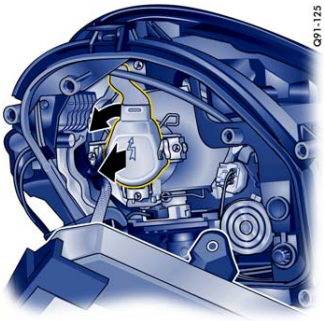
Changing bulb for high beam Halogen headlights

1. Turn housing cover counter-clockwise and take it off.
2. Turn bulb holder clockwise and remove it (bayonet lock).
3. Pull both plug release tabs apart and pull plug out.
4. Replace the defective bulb with bulb holder.
5. Insert bulb holder and turn it as far as it will go to the left.
6. Close the housing cover.

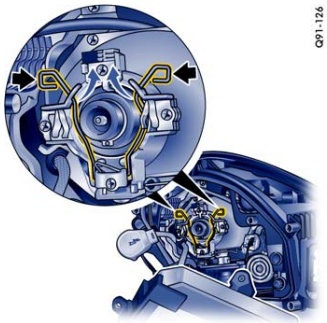
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Q91-124



Q91-125



Q91-126

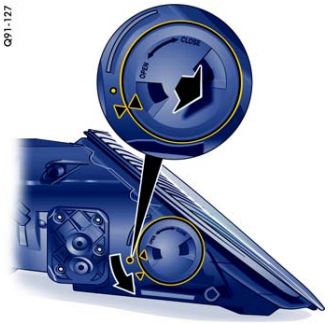
Changing bulb for low beam/high beam Bi-Xenon headlights

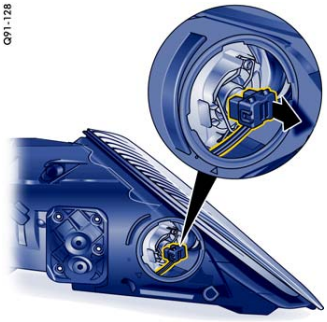
1. Unscrew the 3 screws **A** on the control unit and remove the control unit.
2. Turn the plug counter-clockwise and pull it off.
3. Disengage both fixing clips.
4. Replace defective bulb.
   When doing so, ensure bulb is seated properly.
5. Engage both fixing clips, push on plug and turn right as far as the stop.
6. Fit control unit and screw tight.

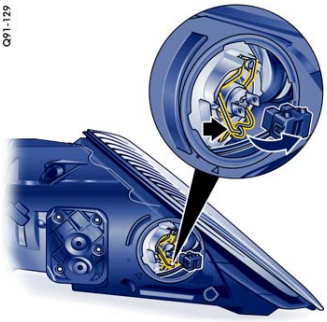
Closing the cover of the headlight housing

1. Push on cover until it is felt to engage.
2. Fasten cover with the 4 screws.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



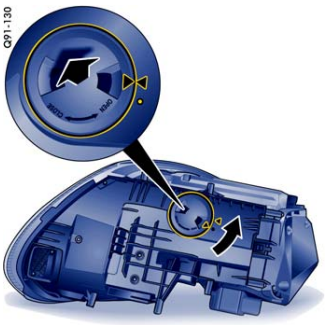


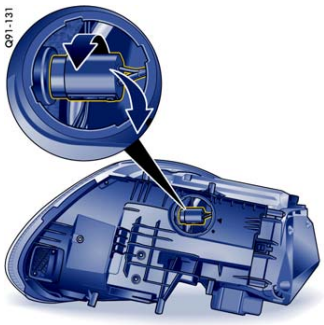


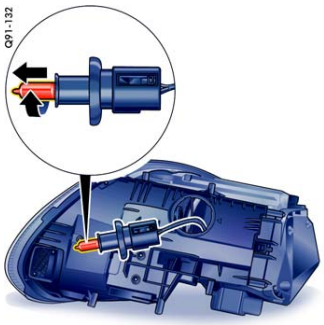
Changing bulb for additional high beam Bi-Xenon headlights

1. Turn housing cover counter-clockwise and take it off.
2. Pull off plug.
3. Disengage fixing clip.
4. Replace defective bulb.
5. Engage fixing clip, insert plug and close housing cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



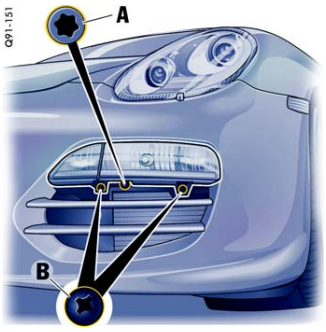




Changing bulb for turn signal light Halogen/Bi-Xenon headlights

1. Turn housing cover counter-clockwise and take it off.
2. Turn bulb holder counter-clockwise and remove it (bayonet lock).
3. Replace the defective bulb (bayonet lock).
4. Insert the bulb holder and turn it clockwise.
5. Close the housing cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

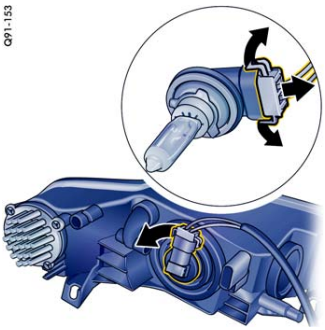


A - *Fog light height adjustment*
B - *Fastening screws*

Changing bulb for fog lights

1. Unscrew both screws **B**.

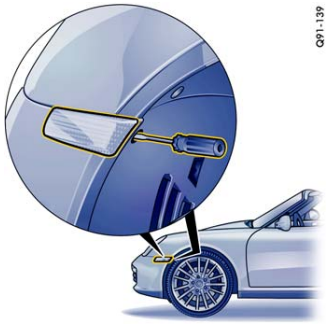
2. Lower headlight slightly and lift it forward and out.



3. Turn bulb holder counter-clockwise and remove it.
4. Pull both plug release tabs apart and pull plug out.
5. Replace the defective bulb with bulb holder.
6. Insert bulb holder and turn it as far as it will go to the right.

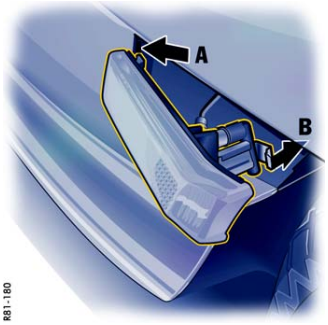
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7. Fit headlight housing from underneath at an angle and then swivel it upward.
8. Screw in both screws.
9. Check operation of the headlight.



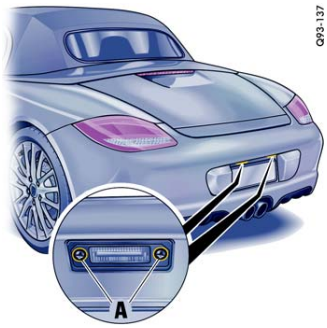
Changing bulb for side marker light

1. Remove the cap in the wheel housing liner with a screwdriver.
2. Insert the screwdriver into the opening in the wheel housing liner parallel to the side marker housing (in direction of travel).
   By pressing with the screwdriver, disengage the securing spring of the side marker housing.



3. Remove side marker and undo bulb holder (bayonet lock).
4. Remove the bulb from the holder and replace it. Insert holder.
   Check operation of the light.
5. Insert the side marker's retaining lugs **A** into the side section at the front.
   Push in side marker until the securing spring **B** is felt to engage.
6. Press the cap into the wheel housing liner.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Q93-137

Number Plate Light

Changing bulb

1. Unscrew both screws **A** and take off the light lens.
2. Remove defective bulb from between the contact springs and replace.
3. Reassemble in reverse order.
   Check operation of the light.

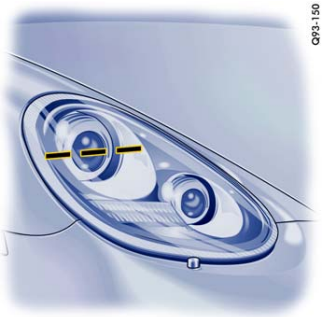
Changing Light-Emitting Diodes and Long-Life Bulbs

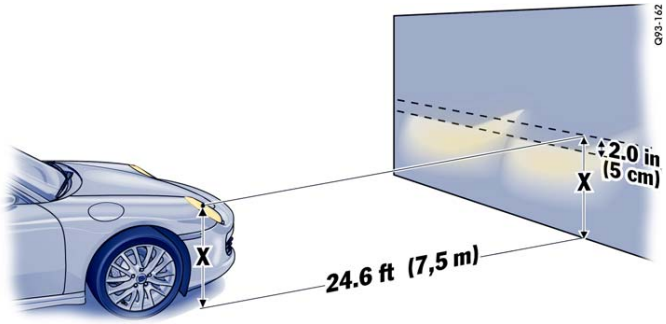
The following lights are equipped with light-emitting diodes (LEDs) or long-life bulbs and cannot be replaced individually. Replacement also involves a greater amount of installation work.

- Side light, front,
- Daytime driving lights on vehicles with Bi-Xenon headlights,
- Tail lights and
- Additional brake lights

▷ Have the defective light replaced at an authorized Porsche dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine





Adjusting Headlights

▷ Please see the chapter "LIGHTS, REPLACING BULBS" on Page 257.

Adjustment

The adjustment is made with the vehicle ready to drive and the fuel tank completely filled.

The driver's seat must be loaded by a person or a 165 lbs. (75 kg) weight and the tire pressures must meet the prescribed values.
After being loaded, the car must be rolled a few meters so that the suspension can settle.

For checking the headlight adjustment, the vertical position of the cutoff of the lowbeam (see fig.) has to be projected on a vertical screen (wall) in distance of 24.6 ft. (7.5 m) from the front lens of the headlamp.
The correct position of the cutoff is 2.0 in. (5 cm) at 24.6 ft. or 7.5 m (0.4°) below a horizontal line, **x** cm from ground to the center of the headlamp lens.

Lateral adjustment of the headlights should be carried out at a specialist workshop with an optical adjustment unit.

Distance

Visual aim shall be performed at not less than 24.6 ft./7.5 m (this value is a rounded down conversion from the 25-foot distance typical of field aim using a screen). The 24.6 ft./7.5 m distance is measured from the headlamp lens to the viewing screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

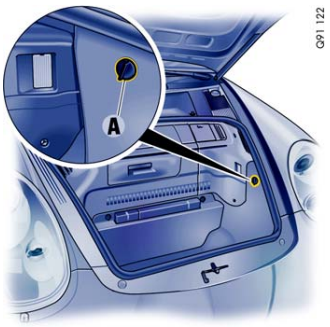
Floor

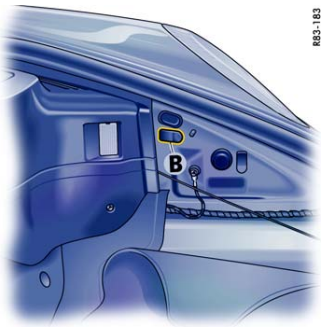
The surface upon which the vehicle rests is flat and approximately level.

Screen

The screen upon which headlamp beams are projected is perpendicular to the floor and the vehicle's longitudinal axis, flat, uniformly light in color, unobstructed, and wide and high enough to accommodate the vehicle beam patterns to be aimed.

The screen should be wide enough to provide at least 3.3 ft. (1 m) of space outboard of the vehicle's headlamp spacing.





Adjustment screws

▷ Detach side carpeting in luggage compartment.
Unscrew plastic nut **A**.
Open the cover of the appropriate adjustment screw.
The setting is adjusted by turning the hexagon socket screws right or left, as appropriate.

B - *Headlight vertical adjustment*

Vertical adjustment (screw B)

▷ turn clockwise = beam moves down
turn counter-clockwise = beam moves up

Note

▷ Do not alter the lateral adjustment.

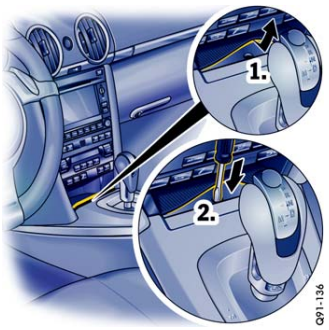
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing

Certain state statutes and local ordinances prohibit towing with a chain, rope or even a tow bar.
In addition, damage to your vehicle may result from improper procedures.
Consult your authorized Porsche dealer for details.

Vehicle towing

Flat bed towing is the preferred type of towing to be used on Porsche vehicles.
Under certain circumstances, wheel lifts may be used when the vehicle will not roll.
The vehicle must be towed with all four wheels off the ground, otherwise damage to the vehicle may result.



PDK selector lever emergency release

In the event of an electronics failure, the selector lever must be released for towing.

1. Lift up the rubber mat in the oddments tray.
2. Insert a screwdriver in the opening and press down until you feel it reach the limit position. The selector lever can now be moved to position **N**.

Towing hook

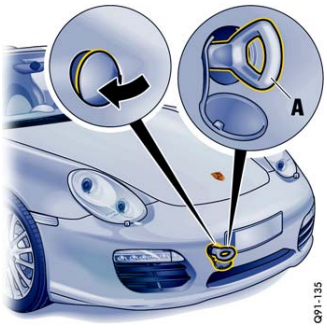
The towing hook **A** is contained in the tool box in the luggage compartment.

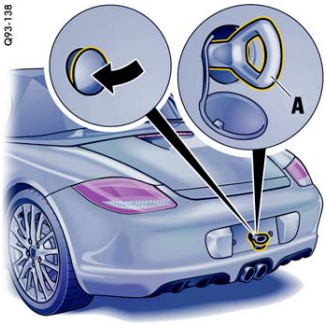
Caution!

Risk of damage to the vehicle.

- ▷ Use the towing hook only for an emergency to remove the vehicle off the road. The towing hook is to be used only to pull the vehicle onto the flat bed, tractor or towing aparatus if the vehicle will roll freely. Under no circumstances is the vehicle to be secured using the towing hook.
- ▷ Never use the towing hook to tow this or any other vehicle.
- ▷ Bear in mind the limited ground clearance of your car on uneven surfaces.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine





Fitting towing hook

When fitting on the rear of the vehicle, the license plate must be removed.

1. Press the lower edge of the appropriate plastic cover into the bumper until the cover disengages.
2. Pull cover out of the bumper and let it hang by its thread.
3. Completely screw in the towing hook **A**.

Removing towing hook

1. Unscrew the towing hook **A**.
2. Insert plastic cover at the lower edge of the opening.
3. Fold the cover up and press on its upper edge to engage it in the bumper.

When removing on the rear of the vehicle, the license plate must be mouted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pulling vehicle onto flat bed

1. Position wooden ramps at the base of the flat bed to reduce the angle of the pull.
2. Reel in the hoist cable and check the underside of the vehicle for any interference.

Tieing down vehicle on flat bed

1. Carefully feed towing straps through the opening in the **rear wheels**.
   Make sure metal parts of straps do not damage rim.
   Make sure the strap is flat over the rim bead.
   Make sure brake backing plate is not damaged.
2. Secure straps to rear of flat bed.
3. Reel in hoist cable only far enough to tension tie-down straps.
4. Carefully feed towing straps through the opening in the **front wheels**.
   Make sure metal parts of straps do not damage rim.
   Make sure the strap is flat over the rim bead.
   Make sure brake backing plate is not damaged.
5. Secure straps to front of flat bed.
6. Release tension on hoist cable, but do not disconnect.
   Use hoist cable as a safety cable.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Identification, Technical Data

Vehicle Identification 274
Technical Data 276
Tire Pressure for Cold Tires 277
Tires, Rims, Tracks 278
Driving Performance* 280
Capacities 281
Weights 282
Dimensions 282
Diagrams 283

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Identification

When ordering spare parts or making inquiries, please always quote the vehicle identification number.

Vehicle data bank

The vehicle data bank is attached to the inside of the “Maintenance” booklet.
It contains all important data about your vehicle.

Note

This data bank cannot be re-ordered if it is lost or damaged.

This label contains the following information:

1. Vehicle Identification No.
2. Type/Type description
3. Engine code/Transmission code
4. Paint No./Interior
5. Optional equipment

Vehicle identification number

In accordance with Federal Safety Regulations, the vehicle identification number of your car is located at the bottom left of the windshield frame and can be seen from the outside.

The vehicle identification number is in the luggage compartment under the battery cover and at the bottom left behind the windshield.

Removing the battery cover

▷ Please see the chapter “BATTERY” on Page 249.

Safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new Porsche complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured.

▷ The sticker also shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your car (perforations) as well as the **G**ross **V**ehicle **W**eight **R**ating and the **G**ross **A**xle **W**eight **R**ating.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire pressure plate

The tire pressure plate is attached to the left-hand door aperture.

Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the underside of the crankcase.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Technical Data

Engine data

	Boxster	Boxster S
Type	MA 120 Horizontally opposed engine, liquid cooled	MA 121 Horizontally opposed engine, liquid cooled
Number of cylinders	6	6
Bore	3.5 in./89 mm	3.8 in./97 mm
Stroke	3.1 in./77.5 mm	3.1 in./77.5 mm
Cubic capacity	176.5 cu. in./2893 cm^3	209.7 cu. in./3436 cm^3
Net-horsepower	255 hp/188 kW	310 hp/228 kW
at crankshaft speed	6400 rpm	6400 rpm
Net torque	214 ft. lb./290 Nm	266 ft. lb./360 Nm
at crankshaft speed	4400 - 6000 rpm	4400 - 5500 rpm
Engine oil consumption	up to 1.6 quarts/622 miles (1.5 liters/1000 km)	up to 1.6 quarts/622 miles (1.5 liters/1000 km)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure for Cold Tires (68 °F/20 °C)

Summer and snow tires

17 inch wheels	front	30 psi (2.0 bar)
	rear	31 psi (2.1 bar)
18 inch wheels	front	30 psi (2.0 bar)
	rear	31 psi (2.1 bar)
19 inch wheels	front	32 psi (2.2 bar)
	rear	34 psi (2.3 bar)

▷ These tire pressures apply only to the tire makes and types approved by Porsche. **Please see the chapter "**WHEEL BOLTS" on Page 236.

▷ Please see the chapter "TPM TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING" on Page 147.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires, Rims, Tracks

Boxster			Tires	Rim	Rim offset	Track
Summer tires		front	205/55 ZR 17 91Y	7 J x 17 H2	55 mm	58.7 in./1490 mm
		rear	235/50 ZR 17 96Y	8.5 J x 17 H2	40 mm	60.4 in./1534 mm
	or	front	235/40 ZR 18 91Y	8 J x 18 H2	57 mm	58.5 in./1486 mm
		rear	265/40 ZR 18 101Y XL	9 J x 18 H2	43 mm	60.2 in./1528 mm
	or	front	235/35 ZR 19 87Y	8 J x 19 H2	57 mm	58.5 in./1486 mm
		rear	265/35 ZR 19 94Y	9.5 J x 19 H2	46 mm	59.9 in./1522 mm
	or	front	235/35 ZR 19 87Y	8.5 J x 19 H2	55 mm	58.7 in./1490 mm
		rear	265/35 ZR 19 94Y	10 J x 19 H2	42 mm	60.2 in./1530 mm
Snow tires		front	205/55 R 17 91V M+S	7 J x 17 H2	55 mm	58.7 in./1490 mm
		rear	* 235/50 R 17 96V M+S	8.5 J x 17 H2	40 mm	60.4 in./1534 mm
	or	front	235/40 R 18 91V M+S	8 J x 18 H2	57 mm	58.5 in./1486 mm
		rear	* 255/40 R 18 95V M+S	9 J x 18 H2	43 mm	60.2 in./1528 mm

The load capacity coefficient (e.g. "91") and maximum speed code letter (e.g. "V") are minimum requirements.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Boxster S			Tires	Rim	Rim offset	Track
Summer tires		front	235/40 ZR 18 91Y	8 J x 18 H2	57 mm	58.5 in./1486 mm
		rear	265/40 ZR 18 101Y XL	9 J x 18 H2	43 mm	60.2 in./1528 mm
	or	front	235/35 ZR 19 87Y	8 J x 19 H2	57 mm	58.5 in./1486 mm
		rear	265/35 ZR 19 94Y	9.5 J x 19 H2	46 mm	59.9 in./1522 mm
	or	front	235/35 ZR 19 87Y	8.5 J x 19 H2	55 mm	58.7 in./1490 mm
		rear	265/35 ZR 19 94Y	10 J x 19 H2	42 mm	60.2 in./1530 mm
Snow tires		front	235/40 R 18 91V M+S	8 J x 18 H2	57 mm	58.5 in./1486 mm
		rear	* 255/40 R 18 95V M+S	9 J x 18 H2	43 mm	60.2 in./1528 mm

The load capacity coefficient (e.g. "91") and maximum speed code letter (e.g. "Y") are minimum requirements.

▷ When changing tires or fitting new ones: **Please see the chapter "**WHEEL BOLTS" on Page 236.

Danger!

Installation of sizes not authorized by Porsche may have a dangerous effect on the driving stability and could result in serious personal injury or death.

▷ Before mounting new tires, check with your Porsche dealer about the current release status.

Tire and rim sizes

Extensive tests are performed before specific tires and wheels are approved by Porsche. Your Porsche dealer has information about approved tires and wheels and is happy to assist you. If aftermarket tires and/or wheels are installed which are not approved by Porsche, the vehicle's roadability and handling characteristics might be impaired. Since Porsche has no data on such combinations, Porsche cannot stand behind the safety or durability of these aftermarket combinations.

Snow chains

Can be mounted only on the rear wheels; **maximum speed 30 mph/50 km/h.** Use only Porsche authorized fine-link cross-type or edge chains. **Snow chain clearance can be guaranteed only with the tire + rim combination marked* without spacers.** Please see the chapter "SPACERS" on Page 243.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving Performance*

Boxster	Manual transmission	Porsche Doppelkupplung
Top track speed 6-speed transmission	164 mph/263 km/h	162 mph/261 km/h
Acceleration 0 – 60 mph	5.6 seconds	5.5 seconds
Acceleration 0 – 60 mph **with Sport+**		5.3 seconds
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h (62 mph)	5.9 seconds	5.8 seconds
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h (62 mph) **with Sport+**		5.6 seconds

Boxster S	Manual transmission	Porsche Doppelkupplung
Top track speed	170 mph/274 km/h	169 mph/272 km/h
Acceleration 0 – 60 mph	5.0 seconds	4.9 seconds
Acceleration 0 – 60 mph **with Sport+**		4.7 seconds
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h (62 mph)	5.3 seconds	5.2 seconds
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h (62 mph) **with Sport+**		5.0 seconds

* At DIN empty weight and half load, without performance-inhibiting extra equipment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Capacities

Use only fluids and fuels authorized by Porsche. Your authorized Porsche dealer will gladly advise you.
Your Porsche has been designed so that it is not necessary to mix any additives with oils or fuels.

Engine	Oil change quantity with oil filter approx. 1.98 U.S.gallons/7.5 liters Please see the chapter "ENGINE OIL RECOMMENDATION" on Page 200.
Coolant	Boxster: approx. 6.05 - 6.18 U.S. gallons/22.9 - 23.4 liters Boxster S : approx. 6.13 - 6.61 U.S. gallons/23.3 - 25 liters
Manual transmission and differential	Boxster: approx. 0.79 U.S. gallons/3 liters Boxster S: approx. 0.85 U.S. gallons/3.2 liters
Porsche Doppelkupplung Gear set	approx. 0.78 U.S. gallons/2.95 liters
Porsche Doppelkupplung Clutch/Hydraulic fluid	approx. 1.37 U.S. gallons/5.2 liters
Power steering	approx. 1.1 quarts/1 liter hydraulic fluid Pentosin CHF 11 S® or CHF 202 S®
Brake fluid	approx. 0.4 quarts/0.39 liters; use only Original Porsche brake fluid
Windshield washer	approx. 0.66 U.S. gallons/2.5 liters without headlight washer approx. 1.58 U.S. gallons/6 liters with headlight washer
Fuel tank	Refill volume approx. 16.9 U.S. gallons/64 liters, including approx. 2.6 U.S.gallons/10 liters reserve.
Fuel quality	Your engine is designed to provide optimum performance and fuel economy using **unleaded premium fuel with an octane rating of 98 RON (93 CLC or AKI).** Porsche therefore recommends the use of these fuels in your vehicle. Porsche also recognizes that these fuels may not always be available. Be assured that your vehicle will operate properly on unleaded premium fuels with octane numbers of at least **95 RON (90 CLC or AKI)**, since the engine's "Electronic Octane™ knock control" will adapt the ignition timing, if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weights

Boxster	Manual transmission	Porsche Doppelkupplung
Empty weight (depending on equipment)	2943 lbs. to 3153 lbs. 1335 kg to 1430 kg	3009 lbs. to 3230 lbs. 1365 kg to 1465 kg
Maximum gross weight	3605 lbs./1635 kg	3682 lbs./1670 kg
Maximum axle load, front*	1731 lbs./785 kg	1731 lbs./785 kg
Maximum axle load, rear*	2017 lbs./915 kg	2017 lbs./915 kg

Boxster S	Manual transmission	Porsche Doppelkupplung
Empty weight (depending on equipment)	2987 lbs. to 3175 lbs. 1355 kg to 1440 kg	3042 lbs. to 3241 lbs. 1380 kg to 1470 kg
Maximum gross weight	3627 lbs./1645 kg	3693 lbs./1675 kg
Maximum axle load, front*	1731 lbs./785 kg	1731 lbs./785 kg
Maximum axle load, rear*	2072 lbs./940 kg	2072 lbs./940 kg

*The maximum gross weight must not be exceeded.
Note: If additional accessories are installed, the useful load will be correspondingly less.

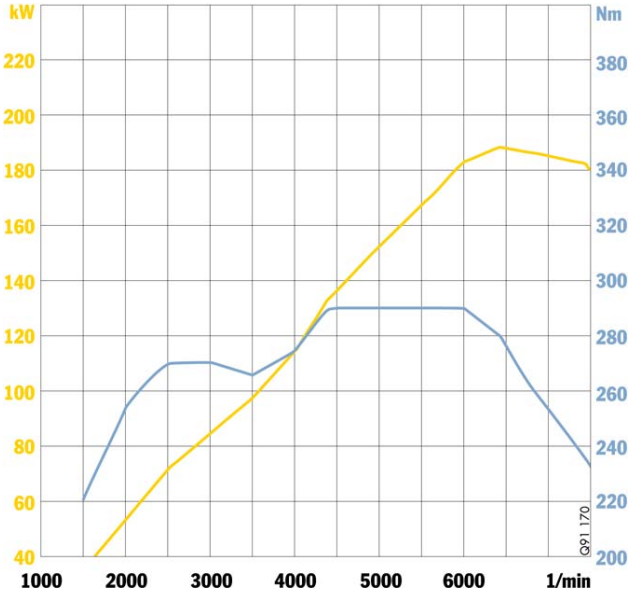
Dimensions

	Boxster	Boxster S
Length	172.1 in./4372 mm	172.1 in./4372 mm
Width	70.9 in./1801 mm	70.9 in./1801 mm
Width with door mirrors	76.9 in./1952 mm	76.9 in./1952 mm
Height	50.9 in./1292 mm, with PASM 50.5 in./1282 mm	50.9 in./1294 mm, with PASM 50.6 in./1284 mm
Wheelbase	95.1 in./2415 mm	95.1 in./2415 mm
Ground clearance	4.4 in./112 mm, with PASM 4.1 in./105 mm	4.3 in./109 mm, with PASM 4.0 in./101 mm
Turning circle	36.4 ft./11.1 m	36.4 ft./11.1 m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

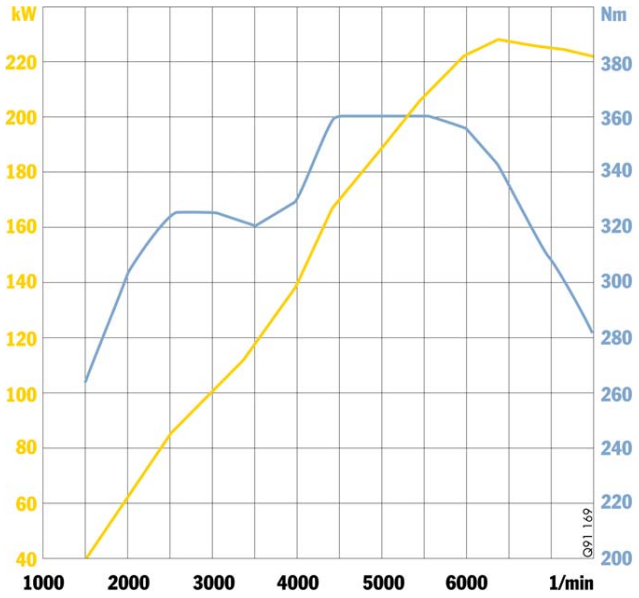
Diagrams

Engine diagram at full power, Boxster



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine diagram at full power, Boxster S



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A

ABS (antilock brake system) 59
Warning light 60
Adaptive sports seat 33
Adjusting Headlights..... 267
Advanced Airbag..... 45
Air conditioning..... 106
Air conditioning compressor 109, 111
Air conditioning system 109
Air distribution 106, 109, 111
Air filter..... 211
Air intake..... 112
Airbag..... 44
Cleaning covers 219
Function 45
Warning light 48
Air-conditioning compressor 108
Alarm system 25, 99
Deactivating passenger compartment monitoring..... 26
Fault indication..... 26
Function indication 25
Not active 246
Alcantara, cleaning 219
Antenna 99, 100, 214
Antifreeze 197
Antilock brake system (ABS) 59
Warning light 60
Ashtray 87
Assembly aids for wheel changes..... 237
Audio operation 97, 98
Auto-button, air conditioning 109
Automatic
Air conditioning system 109
Anti-glare mirrors 30
Car washes 214
Door locking 18, 24
Garage door 76
Headlight adjustment..... 79
Speed control 84, 85, 120
Transmission 174
Automatic speed control..... 120
Indicator light..... 120
Average consumption..... 131, 161
Average speed 131, 161

B

Backrest
Adjustment 32
Release 32
Battery..... 249
Care..... 250
Charge state..... 249
Charging 250
Putting vehicle into operation 251
Remote control 254
Removing 252
Replacing 251
Warning light..... 128
Winter operation..... 251
Before driving off 8, 9
Belts 42
Cleaning 219
Tensioner 42
Warning light..... 43
Blower adjustment 106, 112
Blower speed adjustment 110
Brake
Break in..... 10
Pads 58
Pedal..... 57
Wear 58
Brake fluid
Changing 203
Checking level..... 202
Level 202
Warning light..... 203
Brake light..... 266
Brake light, additional 266
Brakes 202
Brake circuit division warning light 203
Brake warning light..... 128
Fluid 202, 281
Fluid warning light..... 203
Function 56
New brake pads or linings..... 58
Pads 10
Parking brake..... 55
Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB) 4
Test stand 65
Break in brakes..... 10
Break in hints..... 10
Bulbs
Chart..... 257
Replacing 257

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

C

Cabriolet 182
Capacities, overview 281
Car care 213
Car telephone 99
Car washes 214
Carpet 219
Catalytic converters 209
Cautions 196, 222
Central locking 246
  Emergency operation 19, 22
  In cars with alarm system 21
  In cars without alarm system 19
  Overload protection 246
Central vents 112
Central warning light 128
Changing light-emitting diodes (LEDs) 266
Changing wheels 237
Check engine
  Warning light 128
Check engine warning light 129
  Opening the oil filler cap 200
Checking pressure 238
Child restraint systems 50
Chime 78, 80
CHRONO Stopwatch 140
Cigarette lighter 88
Circulating-air button 106, 110
Clock 127, 160
Clutch 60, 172
Clutch pedal 60
Combination filter 211
Comfort seat 33
Coming home mode 79, 80
Communication management 97
Compact disc
  Player 98
  Storage 90
Compartment monitoring 25
Convertible top 182
  Care 215
Coolant 124, 197, 281
  Checking 197
  Level 197
  Temperature gage 124
  Topping off 197
  Warning light 124
Cooling system 124, 197
  Warning light 124
Cornering light 78
  Indicator light 123
Crankcase ventilation 209
Cruise control 84, 85, 128
Cupholder 86

D

Data bank 274
Daytime driving lights 78
  Changing bulbs 266
  On-board computer 160
Defrosting windows 31, 106, 110
Diagnostic socket 11
Dimensions 282
Direction indicator light, front 266
Door 18
  Handles 18
  Locks 18, 215
  Mirror 30
  Mirror heating 31
  Mirrors 29
  Windows 18, 27, 182, 216
Drive-Off Assistant 173
Driving
  Hints 8
  Winter 179
Driving off
  Drive-Off Assistant 173
  Launch Control 177
Driving performance 280
Drop-center rim 233

E

Electrical system 245
Emergency flasher switch 77
Emergency operation 22
  Central locking 19, 22
  Convertible top 185
  Ignition key 74
  Lids 248
  Tank flap 205
Emergency service 222
Emergency starting with jumper cables. 255, 256
Emission control system 129, 208, 209
Engine
  Checking the oil level 157
  Diagram 283
  Exhaust 5
  Number 275
  Oil consumption 10, 199
  Oil level 199
  Oil level indicator 157
  Oils 199, 281

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speeds 10
Starting 75
Stopping 76
Engine compartment
Blower 76, 124
Blower fan 124
Care 216
Lid 93
Lid warning light 92
Engine oil
Change 201
Consumption 10
Performance class 201
Recommendation 200
Topping off 200
Viscosity 201
Exhaust
Pipes 5
System 55
Tailpipes, stainless steel 217
External antenna 100

F

Filler flap 205
Fire extinguisher 101
Flat tire 239
Floor mats 219
Fluids 211
FM reception 97
Fog light 80
Fog light, rear 78, 80
Fog lights
Changing bulb 264
Footbrake 56
Footwell lights 69
Fresh air intake 112
Front lid 92, 93
Fuel 126, 205
Containers 4, 207
Economy 204
Evaporation control 207
Fuels containing ethanol 207
Level gage 126
Level warning light 126
Recommendation 206, 207
Recommendations 206
Tank 206
Function keys 40
Fuses, replacing 247

G

Garage
Door 76
Door opener 102
Lift 242
Gear display 116, 118
Gear shift indicator 123
Glove compartment 90
Gong 14, 73, 78, 80, 133
Ground clearance 4

H

Handbrake 55
Hardtop 190
Head restraints 32
Headlights 258
Adjusting 267, 268
Beam adjustment 79
Changing bulbs 259, 261
Cleaning system 82, 210, 281
Flasher 81
Removing 258
Heated rear window 31, 193, 194
Heated rear window/Door mirror heating 113
Heater 109
Heating 106
High beam
Indicator light 123
Lever 78, 80
High beam, additional
Changing bulb 261
High-pressure cleaning units 213
Home mode 79, 80
HomeLink 102
Hoods 92, 93, 95
Horn 12, 21
Hot exhaust pipes 5

I

Ignition key 72
Emergency operation 74
Ignition lock 72
Withdrawing ignition key,
PDK transmission 176
Immobilizer 15
Indicator lights 116, 118
INFO Warning messages 136
Instrument
Illumination 120
Lights 78, 80
Panel 116, 118, 162

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior 69
Interior lights 69
Interior mirror 30

J

Jumper cables 255

K

Key codes 15
Keys 15, 16

L

LATCH System 54
Launch Control 177
Leather care 218
License plate light 78, 80
Lids 93, 95
  Emergency unlocking 248
Lifting vehicle 242
Light
  Daytime driving 78
  Flasher 78, 80, 81, 123
  Low beam 78, 80, 81
  Sensor for instrument illumination 116, 118
  Switch 78, 80, 81
Light alloy wheels
  Inscription 233
Light functions, individual 81
Lights 69
  Care 218
  Headlight beam adjustment 79
LIMIT Acoustic warning signal for speed limit 133
Load switch-off 246
Loading information 234
Locking 20, 23
Low beam 81
Luggage
  Net 91
Luggage compartment 94
  Lid 92
  Lid warning light 92
  Unlocking lid 16
Luggage compartment/
engine compartment lid, warning lights 92

M

Maintenance 196
Make-up mirror 41
Maximum permitted engine speeds 10
  Manual transmission 172
Mirror
  Folding in 30
  Heating 31, 113
  Inside 29
Mirrors 29, 71
  Anti-glare 30
Multi-functional steering wheel 40

N

Navigation 97
  Selection field, on-board computer 146
Notes on
  Car care 213
  Maintenance 196
Number plate light 78, 80
  Changing bulb 266

O

Octane rating 206, 207
Odometer 121
Off delay 79, 80
Oil 199, 281
  Change 201
  Checking level 157
  Consumption 10
  Level checks 199
  Level indicator 157
  Recommendation 200
  Topping off engine oil 200
OIL Display and measurement
of the engine oil level 157
On-board computer 130
  Basic settings 131, 159
  Calling on-board computer functions 131
  Functions and display possibilities 131
  General information 160
  Language versions 159
  Operation, controls 130
  Selecting a radio station 146
  Setting the clock 160
  Switching daytime driving lights on/off 160
  Switching on navigation 146
  Tire pressure warnings 152
  Warnings and messages 162
On-board literature 2
Operating voice control 130
Operating your Porsche in other Countries 204
Orientation light 69
Outside temperatur indicator 127
Oxygen sensor 209

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

P

Paint
- Care ... 213, 215
- Data ... 275

ParkAssistant ... 70

Parking
- PDK transmission ... 179

Parking aids ... 70, 71

Parking brake ... 55
- Warning light ... 56

Parking light ... 78, 80, 81

Particle filter ... 211

Passenger compartment monitoring ... 25

PDK transmission ... 174
- Drive-Off Assistant ... 173
- Driving in winter ... 179
- Faults ... 175
- Kickdown ... 177
- Launch Control ... 177
- Manual selection mode ... 178
- Reduced driving program ... 180
- Selector lever emergency release ... 269
- Selector lever positions ... 176
- Shifting gears on the steering wheel ... 177
- Sport mode ... 176
- Transmission fluid ... 211
- Warning messages ... 180

Pen holder ... 90

Plastic parts ... 218
- Care ... 218

Platform lift ... 242

Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) ... 66
- Sport mode ... 66

Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB) ... 4

Porsche Communication Management (PCM) ... 97

Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) ... 174
- Drive-Off Assistant ... 173
- Driving in winter ... 179
- Faults ... 175
- Kickdown ... 178
- Launch Control ... 174
- Manual selection mode ... 178
- Reduced driving program ... 180
- Selector lever emergency release ... 269
- Selector lever position ... 174, 176
- Shifting gears on the steering wheel ... 177
- Sport mode ... 176
- Transmission fluid ... 211

Porsche Stability Management (PSM) ... 63
- Information light ... 65

Power steering fluid level ... 211, 281

Power windows ... 18, 182

Practical tips ... 222

Putting vehicle into operation ... 251

R

Radiator fan ... 76, 198

Radio reception ... 97

Rain sensor ... 82

Range on remaining fuel ... 131, 160

Rear fender
- Retractable ... 67

Rear lid ... 92, 93, 95

Rear spoiler ... 67, 68

Rear view mirrors ... 29, 30

Rear window defogger ... 31, 113

Rear window heating ... 113

Recirculating-air button ... 110

Refuelling ... 206

Relays ... 245

Remote control ... 16
- Readiness ... 17
- Replacing battery ... 254
- Standby funktion ... 17
- Synchronization ... 17

Replacement key ... 15

Replacing bulbs ... 257

Replacing wiper blades ... 212

Retractable spoiler ... 67

Rims
- Diameter ... 233
- Rim width ... 233
- TPM sensors ... 229

Running in ... 10

S

Safety belts ... 42
- Cleaning ... 219
- Tensioner ... 42
- Warning light ... 43

Safety compliance sticker ... 274

Sealing set ... 240

Seals ... 218
- Care ... 218

Seat
- Adaptive sports seat ... 33
- Adjustment ... 32
- Comfort seat ... 33
- Heating ... 37
- Memory ... 35
- Position ... 32

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sports bucket seat 34
Sports seat 33
Standard seat....33
Ventilation 38
Seat memory
Operating with the remote control 36
Operation with person buttons 35
Selector lever position 116, 118
Selector lever position indicator,
PDK transmission 175
Service 137
SET Basic setting on on-board computer 159
Shift indicator 123
Shifting gears
Drive-Off Assistant....173
Manual transmission....172
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)....174
Side light, front....266
Side marker light 78, 80
Changing bulb....265
Side vents....112
Snow chains....231, 277, 279
Snow tires....230, 278
Socket....245
Spacers....243
Spare key 15
Spare wheel....277
Speed code letter....232
Speed control....85, 106
Automatic....84
Indicator light....120
Speed limit....133, 232
Speedometer 122
Spoiler....67
Fixed....68
Retractable....67
Sport Chrono Plus package
CHRONO stopwatch 140
Sport mode 61
Sport mode 65
PDK transmission....176
Switching on/off....61
Switching PASM on/off 66
Sport plus mode 61
Sports bucket seat 34
Sports exhaust system....55
Sports seat 33
Stability management system 63
Standard seat....33
Starter switch....72
Starting....73
Starting engine 75
Steering column
Locking 73
Steering lock 72
Steering wheel
Adjustment 38
Function keys....40
Heating 39
Lock 73
Multi functional....40
PDK shift buttons 174
Stopping engine....76
Stopwatch....140
Storage options 89
Storage possibilities....89
Storing your Porsche 220
Sun visors 41
Suspension management....66

T

Tachometer 123
Tail light 266
Tank 205, 206
Ventilation system 207
Technical data 276
TEL Telephone information....137
Telephone 99
Temperature setting....106, 109, 110
Temperature, outside indicator....127
Test stand, measurements 65
Theft protection 14
Tire
Care....227
Damage 227
Designations....231
Pressure plate 225
Replacements 228
Traction....226
Wear 226
Tire pressure monitoring
Warning light....155
Wheels 229
Tire pressure monitoring (TPM) 147
Tires 10, 223, 278, 279
Care....223
Checking pressure 238
Inscription....232
Loading information....234
New tires....10
Pressure....224, 280
Pressure monitoring 147

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pressure plate 275
Removing and storing..... 229
Sealant 239, 240
Sidewall 232
Size 232
Snow tires 230
Tools 94
Towing..... 269, 271
Towing hook..... 269
TPM Tire pressure monitoring..... 147
Track..... 278
Transmission
Drive-Off Assistant..... 172
Fluid..... 211, 281
Manual transmission..... 172
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) 172, 174
Trip Odometer 121
Trunk entrapment 95
Turn signal
Indicator light..... 123
Turn signal light, front
Changing bulb..... 263
Turn signals 81, 123

U

Undercoating..... 208, 217

V

Valves 228
Vanity mirror..... 41
Vehicle
Care..... 213
Engine number..... 275
Identification 274
Identification label 274
Identification number 274
Lifting..... 242
Load capacity 235
Putting into operation 251
Safety compliance sticker..... 274
Washing 214
Vehicle identification number..... 274
Ventilation 109
Vents 106, 109, 112
Viscosity, engine oil..... 201
Voice control, button 130
Voice control, PCM 130

W

Warning lights and messages..... 162
Washer
Fluid 210
Fluid warning light..... 210
Washer fluid..... 281
Washer lever..... 82
Washing 214
Weights 282
Welcome Home Function 79, 80
Wheel..... 10, 223, 278, 279
Alignment 229
Balancing..... 229
Bolts 236
Care..... 223
Changing 239
Checking pressure 238
Inscription..... 232
Loading information..... 234
Securing bolts..... 236
Security wheel bolts 15
Sidewall..... 232
Size 232
Tire pressure 224
Tire pressure plate 275
Tire sealant..... 239, 240
Wheels
Assembly aids for wheel changes 237
Care..... 218
TPM sensors..... 229
Windows..... 182, 216
Anti-crushing protection 28
Care..... 216
Opening/Closing 27

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Washer nozzles 82
Washer system 210, 281
Windshield
Wiper blades, changing 212
Windshield wipers 82, 212
Replacing 212
Windstop 189
Winter operation
Battery 251
Coolant 197
Engine oil 198
Jumper cables 255, 256
Locks 215
Seals 218
Snow chains 231
Tires 230
Washer fluid 210
Wiper blades 212
Wiper
Blades 212
Wiper blades
Care 217
Changing 212

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine